Aston. e. 24. 4

THE Key of Historie:

OR,

A most Methodicall Abridgement of the foure chiefe Monarchies, *Babylon, Persia, Greece,* and *Rome.*

Being a generall and compendious *Chronicle from the Flood.*

Digested into three Bookes:

Whereunto is added a marginall Chronologie of every Roman Emperours Raigne, and of all the most memorable persons and accidents.

Together with briefe Illustrations upon the more obscure Names, Places and Offices.

The third Edition.

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY ASTON COLLECTION 1903

Written by that excellent and most learned man, JOHN SLEIDAN.

LONDON,
Printed for *William Sheares*, at his shop in *Britains-Burse*, and neare *Yorke-house*. 1635.

09::3810

The Translator to the *indifferent Reader.*

THE praise of Historie in generall, or this Generall Historie, being but tralatitions; especially both speaking their owne worth, may bee my Apogie for both; either to excuse me from the usuall encomions in the Preface to most Histories, or dismisse mee with *Salusts* speech, concerning *Carthage*. Tis

better to speake nothing, then not to speake home. For the first thereof, *Ciceroes* five most significant, and severally volumde worthy *Epithetes*, shall suffice: History is *Times evidence*, *Antiquities Herald*, *Truths Light*, *Memories life*, and *Lifes Mistresse:* And for the other, (this Chronicall History following) besides the Authors owne admired and approved knowledge in History, the large Commentaries, and explication of the originall Authors, set forth by the accurate investigation of two reverend Divines, and a famous Poet, warrant it. His maine drift, as thou mayest easily perceive, was to bee

suc-

ſuccinct and cloſe, but withall perſpicuous; by which he hath made himſelfe the Prince of *Epitomists*: and by his tranſcendent delineation of the foure chiefe Monarchies, chiefe Monarch of all Hiſtorians in this kind. For hee hath attained to ſuch a height of perfection, that as *Polybius* would have it, a man may at the firſt view, behold the whole body of Hiſtory, and every member ſo pourtraied to life, that ſcarce any man of eminencie, or act of excellencie; either in Church or Commonwealth, is omitted: being withall ſo exactly and methodically coucht together, that thy eye may run

in a line, from the beginning to the end. Hee hath made it a common *Key* to every doore, and a little *Perspecill* to carry thy sight all the world over: the worke it selfe, being the very *marrow* and *quintessence* (pardon the metaphors) of all historie. The consideration hereof invited me (one most unfit) to adventure the transplantation of this precious exoticke roote, into our owne soile. Wherein my care to the Authors meaning was religious, which (as I supposed) would bee the chiefest thing aimed at; especially in an old mans last worke (for hee ended this booke and his life both

in

in one yeare) where wee must not looke for a Panegyricall stile, or loftie words (which I might have perform'd, and perhaps with more ease) but, as it is a plaine, facile, and methodicall narration best suiting with the tender capacity of younger *Incipients*, for whom the Author entending it; well knowing that oftentimes young wits dote more upon frothy words, then solid matter. Plainnesse is my ambition, else needed not these little marginall illustrations onely to satisfie a meere English Reader; in some places (if thou considerest not my reasons) I may seeme to swerve

from the Authors meaning.

As in the word *Cæsar*, which the Author uses for Emperour, almost throughout the Booke. But after *Nero* I call them all Emperours (onely for more plainnesse) because the line of the *Cæsars* was extinct in him.

France I call *Gallia*, till about *Honorius* his time, when (after the French *Germanes* had seated themselves there) it fell into their name. I have taken the same course too touching other Countries and Cities, till they changed their names: except such as still (with very little alteration of the ancient idiomes) retaind their names,

as

as *Vesontio*, now *Besanson*. *Suessions*, now *Soissons*, &c. Some may thinke, that *Iulius Cæsar* would have sounded better then *Caius Cæsar*, (by which name the Authour calls him in every place) becauſe that compellation is more commonly knowne: but queſtionleſſe, the Authors meaning therin, was to avoid all doubts; for wee reade of more of the *Cæsars* beſides him, that had the *nomen Iulius*, as *Lucius Iulius Cæsar*, and *Sextus Iulius Cæsar*, but never any other called *Caius*, that ever I heard of.

For my well-meaning preſumption, in adding the times of each more memorable accident, and of the

severall raignes of all the Emperours; I hope I shall find pardon, sith it may serve for a little Chronologie.

Though I cannot bee so ambitious to desire a freedome from every open mouthed *Ardelio*, when the best deserving men could never yet obtaine it; yet I both wish and intreat, that every indifferent eye would make a charitable construction of (if I may so call them) my good endeavours, ballancing all venial errours, with my young experience, and inconvenience of study, and to accept of the Diamond, though not set in it's deserved foile: the one may encourage

encourage, the other cannot daunt me, for I have set up my resolution, in old *Mimnermus* his Distich.

Oblectes animum, plebs est morosa legendo,
Ille bene de te dicet, & ille male.

Farewell.

TO THE MOST Illuſtrious Prince, *Eberard*, Duke of *Wittenberg*, and *Leck*, Count in *Mumpelgart*; *Iohn Sleidan* wiſheth all health, &c.

Literature being the greateſt ornament of your dignity (Princely Eberard) *though it be but indifferent; yet that eſpecially, which comprehends in it the Acts of all ages, ſuits beſt to your Condition: And amongſt us that profeſſe the name of Chriſt;*

Christ; the Holy Scriptures challenge the highest place in this kinde, which both set forth the originall of man-kinde, shew us Gods will, and affoord us many examples, both of his mercy and wrath. Next to them wee ought to know, what is delivered to memory concerning other Nations. For scarce can that accident happen, whereof there is not some Patterne extant, and in former times practised. In which behalfe, those that governe a Common-wealth, have an exceeding great helpe and furtherance, if they neglect not this kinde of learning. Now that way is most commodious, which divides the whole course of this

this world into foure Monarchies. As concerning the first of them, we want bookes necessary, having, besides the Scripture, almost nothing credit-worthy, or whereupon wee may rely. That age questionlesse was altogether heroicall and most illustrious for surpassing and memorable exploits. But what part thereof came to our hands? Semiramis, Babylon, *and* Sardanapalus *are memorized, and almost nothing else. But for that dreadfull, and never yet paralleld, terrible, and dire spectacle seene in any one man, which* Nabuchadonozer *relates of himselfe, as* Daniel *hath it; who ever toucht upon it? that a King of such puissance, should*

should bee brutified, cast out of his Kingdome, banished from his ancient habitation, thurst out of doores, excluded from all humane society, have his nature metamorphosed, and feed with other bruit beasts, and be quite degenerated into a beast. This is there related plainely; but with what astonishment thinke we, were they strucken that beheld this lamentable example of Gods Majestie and fury? Therefore I have briefly run over the Assyrian *or* Babylonian *Monarchy, because it must be wholly bounded within the compasse of holy Scriptures; but the other three that follow, are very famous by many Authors workes; especially the*

the Greeke *and* Roman. *Amongst which writers, those* (*of the* Greekes) *challenge the first ranke*, Herodotus, Thucidides, Zenophon *and* Polybius: *for those other that* Cicero *mentions*, Pherecides, Hellanicus, Acusilas, Phylliſtus, Agathocles, Theopompus, Ephorus, Caliſthenes, Timæus, Clitarchus, Silenus, *are loſt: as alſo thoſe* Latines *that wrote the ancient* Romane *Hiſtory, whom the ſame* Cicero *nominates*, viz. *the* Pontifies Annals, Fabius Pictor, Marcus Portius Cato, Lucius Piſo, Cælius Antipater, Caius Vannius, Vennonius, Clodius, Aſiſo, Accius, Lucius Siſenna. *And thoſe indeed were*

were the Authors, out of whom, Titus Livius, who is better halfe dismembred, and before him, Salust, imperfect also, collected their workes. Cicero indeed used not this kind of writing, but was most studiously verst in it, as his Bookes witnesse, which are every where besprinkled and inameled with remembrances of all antiquity: but hee was a most diligent observer of the course of times, so as by him, one may attaine to the orderly knowledge both of persons, ages and the times of accidents. For otherwise all writings are obscure: and because he was wont to say, that the writings of Histories) especially after the Greek fashion)

was very much Oratoricall: therefore Pomponius Atticus *counselled him to this kind of writing, complaining that Historie stood in need of the Latine tongue: and alleaging, that hee was able to affect that, which, even in this kind of writing also, would make* Rome *not inferiour to* Greece. *So hee writ a Commentary if his Consulship in* Greeke, *and begunne another in Latine, as he saith himselfe. For hee was very desirous to have that yeare wherein hee was Consull, celebrated by other mens pennes: insomuch that he professed, that if they forbeare him, he would not forbeare himselfe, but would write concerning himselfe.*

Caius

Caius Cæſar *onely writes of his owne exploits, and borrowed nothing from any of thoſe before him. Then alſo flouriſht* Diodorus *of* Sicilia, *and a little after,* Dionyſius *of* Halicarnaſſus: *then* Plutarch, Suetonius, Cornelius Tacitus, Appianus, Herodianus, Trogus Pompeius, Ælianus, Quintus Curtius: *but many of thoſe are either wholly, or the greater part of them loſt. After thoſe, many more followed, who (each one continuing the Hiſtorie of his time, or of his Country (held on, even till within our memory. And we muſt be ſeene in all thoſe, or at leaſt a good part of them, to furniſh our ſelves with that abilitie which*

which is requred. Some also we must reade for the matter it selfe; others, for the matter, together with the stile and forme of speech. In which ranke Caius Cæsar *alone, justly challenges preeedencie among the Latine: for none are more pure, none more elegant than his: who for a delectable style, farre excelled not onely those that came not long after him, but also all of his time. Besides those before mentioned, wee must likewise turne over such Ecclesiasticall Authors, as treat of the conversion of Religion, the afflictions of the godly, or the Lawes and Decrees of Councels and Bishops. And because the holy Scriptures foreshew the Papall Kingdome,*

dome. Wee must search out the beginning, together with the progresse and increase thereof, thereby to inable our selves, to compare it with those marks and signes which the Scripture hath chalkt out. But because this large argument which wee have propounded, is various, manifold, and comberſome, and this field ſo exceeding ſpacious not to bee gone over in any ſhort time: ſome nearer way muſt be taken, by a methodicall courſe, for the helpe of younger Students: as for thoſe of deeper experience, they may well enough by themſelves, as they ſay ſwim over the whole ſtreame of Writers. And for this end have I undertaken this taske

that

that the Neoterie may have a tract and path-way leading to their further learning, by which, in the meane time, they may trace, as by a line, till they bee growne riper ſchollers, and come to that proficiencie, as to bee able to caſt away, and deſpiſe thoſe rudiments. For I have not writ this, that they ſhould be content with, or confine themſelves to theſe bounds, but to give them a taſte of their future reading: when being invited by variety of matter, they may bee more ſpurred on, hereafter to perluſtrate the Authors and Bookes themſelves, from whence theſe are culled. But this kind of ſtudie properly appertaining to theſe, that

are appointed to the governement of a people, as I said before, I suppose (most Noble Duke) I shall not misapply, to your age and condition, in offering up those my small watch workes to your Highnesse: so that by you, and through your hands, as I may so say, the residue of yonger Students, may receive some fruit thereof, if any may redound from thence. And albeit, those most worthy men, your Tutors, Iohn Sigismund, *and* Sebastian Cox, *use their best diligence about your instruction and erudition: yet as in the culture of a little Garden plot, which we desire to have exquisite, and arraied with all kind of flowers, wee scorne not*

not any little plants & herbs brought us from another ground; so likewise I hope this small Present of mine, sent to the manuring of the seed-plot of your Learning, will not be inacceptable, being but onely offered up for a time, til you your self, having gotten strength, as I said before, be able to walke abroad, and course up and down these open fields and flowrie meads. For which course, you have that most renowned Prince, your Fathers vertue, for a resplednent Patterne: who by his elegant learning, added no small ornament and lustre to his Noble birth; and that which is all in all, he made right use of this his faculty: to wit, that the

name of God ſhould bee celebrated, Churches and Schools well ordered, godly teachers provided for, and a competencie allowed for maintenance of Schollers. For this duty God chiefly requires at the hands of you Princes; and as he ſeverely puniſheth the neglect thereof, ſo alſo hee remunerates thoſe with moſt bountifull rewards, that ſhew themſelves faithfull Stewards herein. Thoſe examples of your illuſtrious Fathers Piety, Conſtancie, and Fortitude, might bee mentioned by name: but you will reade them in good time hereafter, emblazoned at large, and ſhall know the proper ornaments of Nobility. For hee that is benigne to

good

good wits, how can it be, that hee should not at one time or other, bee repayed by them, with the deserved fruits of gratitude, and bee celebrated to Posterity: Therefore understanding, both the dignity of his places, and the charge laid upon him by God; hee made it his chiefe care to have your minde trained up to godlinesse and learning, even from your young and tender yeares. And that which is the feeling pulse of a Fathers love, nothing ever joyed him more, then to see his expectation bettered by your industrie. And I doubt not of your owne voluntary propension that way (as much as your age can beare) and your Tu-

tors their diligent vigilancie. Wherefore Illustrious Prince, proceed auspiciously, and as you are borne to the government of a Commonwealth, so furnish your selfe with such ammunition, as is both perpetuall, and will affoord infallible aide: and not onely extenuate the labour, which you must sometimes undergoe in governing an ancient Province, but also make it easie and pleasant.

From *Strasburg*. Anno Dom. 1556.

IOHN SLEIDAN

of the foure chiefe Monarchies.

OR,

The Key of Hiſtory.

The firſt Booke.

BEfore I treat of the foure chiefe & principall Monarchies of the world, *Babylon*, *Perſia*, *Greece* and *Rome*: I muſt ſpeake a word or two of the great difference, about the computation of yeares, from

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY ACTON COLLECTION 1903 CAMBRIDGE

the beginning of the world; for the Hebrewes, *Euſebius*, S. *Auſtin*, *Alphonſus*, and *Mirandula* doe exceedingly vary amongſt themſelves. But becauſe almoſt all the learned men of our times, doe in this point follow the account of the Hebrewes: I alſo (ſeeing the caſe ſo ſtands) will tread in their ſteppes. And firſt of all, that I may come to my purpoſe, I meane the firſt *Monarchie* (paſſing by thoſe occurrents which hapned in the [a] firſt age of all, as alſo the narration of the *Flood*, ſithence all thoſe are contained in holy Scriptures, and cannot bee better expreſt) Ile take ſtart at that time, when the race of mankind being reduced to a very ſmall number, begunne (after that the * maſſie multitude of waters was againe diſperſed, and the earth made dry) to increaſe anew. The time

[a] Gen. 12. 3. 4. 5. &c.

* *Moles.*

time of the *Flood* is referred to the yeare of the world, 1656. and [b] *Mathusalah* the seventh from *Adam*, died at that very time, being 969. yeares of age. [c] *Noah Mathusalah* his * Grandchild by his sonne *Lamech*, (being then 600. yeares of age, and by Gods especiall favour, preserved together with his family;) now when the number of men began to multiply by little and little, was the first that caused his children and posterity, by removing into severall Countries, to inhabite the earth, and build themselves Cities: and afterwards (about the hundreth yeare after the Flood) allotted to each of them his proper Province.

b Gen. 5.

c Gen. 7.
* *Nepos.*

At which time *Nimrod*, *Noahs* Grand-childs sonne, together with his retinue, inhabited the land of the *Chaldees*, but at length the multi-

tude of men ſtill multiplying) many were neceſſarily enforced to remoove and ſeeke out new ſeates and Colonies. They before their departure, deſirous to leave their perpetuall memoriall behind them, did thereupon ([d] *Nimrod* being their Chieftaine) beginne to build a Citie, and within that, a Tower of tranſcendent height: And forgetting Gods wrath, which had ſo lately ſwallowed up the whole Globe of the earth, and whereof *Noah* without all doubt, had very much, very often, and diligently preached to them: intended to extend the fame of their owne names, by vaine-glorious and ambitious workes. But God herewith offended, made fruſtrate theſe their enterpriſes, ſending amongſt them a confuſion of tongues: whereas before that time, there was but one and the

[d] Gen. 11. It is credible, that hereupon the Poets tooke occaſion to make that fiction of the Giants, who heaping mountaine upon mountaine, went about to overthrow the gods. *Michael Glycas* writes, that there were forty years ſpent about building of this Tower.

the same kind of language all the world over. Thus being constrained to surcease their begunne worke, they departed into severall parts of the world. From this confusion of tongues, the Citie called *Babell*, tooke the name: and from that time, I meane from the 131. yeare after the Flood, or thereabouts, the kingdome of the *Chaldees & Babylonians* tooke the beginning. The first K. thereof was *Nimrod*, before spoken of, who as it is written, ruled 56 yeares. The Scripture stiles him the mighty [e] Hunter, and attributes to him strength and puissance. Others call him *Saturn*; and report, that in the 45. yeare of his raigne, he sent away certaine Princes of Colonies, hither and thither, as *Assur*, *Madai*, *Magog*, and *Mosech*. Those erected Kingdomes after their owne names, as *Assyria*, *Media*, [f] *Magog*, and *Moseo*, the two

e Gen. 10. 1 Chro. 1. Mich. 5. The land of *Babylon* is called the land of *Nimrod*.

f *Suidas* writes that the *Persians* were so called, but *Melancthon* thinkes them to be the now Turkes,

two first whereof doe wholly belong to *Asia*, and the third and last to *Asia*, and *Europe*. The Scripture makes mention of this [g] *Assur*, and that *Niniveh* was by him builded. *Jupiter Belus* succeeded his Father *Nimrod*, who (as Historie speakes) possessed all the countrey from the Sunne-setting to *Sarmatia* in *Europe*, and afterwards made warre against *Sabbatius* King of *Saga*, whom not hee, by reason he was prevented by death, but his sonne *Ninus* subdued: who extending his dominions farre and wide, was the first that ever tooke upon him a Monarchie. *Noah* died 350. yeares after the Flood, and about the 18. yeares after his death, [b] *Abraham* the tenth from *Noah* (so commanded by God) left his Countrey, being then 75. yeares of age and in [i] 24. yeares after that, God made a Covenant with

g *Assur.* Gen. 10. *Belus.*

Ninus the first Monarch, about 1905. of the world.

b Gen. 11.

i Gen. 17.

with him, by ordaining the circumcision. In the [k] 100 yeare of his age, his sonne *Isaac* was borne unto him: hee lived after that 75 yeares, for the terme of mans life was now much shortened. The manner of his Grand-childe [l] *Iacobs* life, and upon what occasion hee went downe into *Ægypt*, and there dyed: how afterwards his posterity remained in *Ægypt* for some ages, oppressed with most grievous bondage: and by Gods favour brought out and set at liberty by his servant *Moses*, the holy [m] Scriptures declare. This departing of the children of *Israel* out of *Ægypt*, is referred to the yeare of the world, 2454, that is, 430 yeares after the promise made to *Abraham*, as [n] S. *Paul* hath it. After *Moses*, the children of *Israel* were governed by Iudges, till the dayes of *Saul*, whom *David* (mo-

[k] Gen. 21.

[l] Gen. 27.

[m] From the 30 chap. of Gen. to the 14 of Exod.

[n] Gal. 3.

(another King of the ſame people) ſucceeded. Now let us returne to the Empire of *Babylon*; *Ninus* being dead, his wife *Semiramis* ſucceeded him in his Empire: who in riches, victories, and triumphs, was inferior to no mortall Prince. She inlarged the towne of *Babylon*, and made it a City of ſufficient greatneſſe, adorning it with divers faire buildings, and invironing it with a wall. Shee ſubdued *Æthiopia*, and made warre alſo in *India*. Her Sonnes *Zameis* the fifth King, performed nothing worthy of memorie; but *Arius*, who next ſucceeded him, conjoyned the *Bactrians* and *Caſpians* to his Empire. It is written, that *Aralius* his ſucceſſor was renowned for his wit and proweſſe, but what he atchieved, is not committed to writing. The next to him *Baleus*, ſubdued many Nations, extending his dom-

Semiramis.

Zameis.

Arius.

Aralius.

Baleus.

dominions even unto *Indea*, and was therefore Sirnamed *Xerxes*, that is, a Conquerour, and Triumpher, or Warriour. *Armatrites* the ninth, was altogether given over to pleaſure and idleneſſe. There is nothing written of *Belochus* the tenth, but that hee applied himſelfe to the ſtudy of ſoothſaying and divining. *Baleus* the eleventh, paralleld *Semiramis*, in renowne for his prowes, and Military induſtry, and hath the fame to have beene highly extolled in ſundry learned mens workes. *Altadas* the twelth, of him it is recorded, that he followed his eaſe and tranquility of life, accounting it a point of folly, to be wearied with multiplicitie of labours, and fettered with variety of cares about inlarging the bounds of his kingdome, becauſe it tended not to the weale and commoditie of

Armatrites.

Belochus.

Altadas.

of any men, but rather to their indammagement and ſervitude.

Mamitus. His ſucceſſour *Mamitus* the thirteenth, ſtirred up his ſubjects on freſh againe, to diligence and induſtry in Military affaires, and his puiſſance gave cauſe of ſuſpition to the *Syrians* and *Ægyptians*.

Mancaleus. For *Mancaleus* the fourteenth his actions affoord not argument

Spharus. worth the diſcourſe. *Spharus* the fifteenth is commended for his great virtue and wiſedome. There is no mention in writing of any memorable

Mamelus. act performed by *Mamelus* the

Sparetus. ſixteenth. In *Sparetus* the ſeventeenth his raigne, hiſtories report, that wondrous accidents

Aſcatades. hapned every where. *Aſcatades* the eighteenth brought all *Syria* under his ſubjection. And thus farre the ſuppoſed *Beroſus*, of whoſe writings almoſt all men make a doubt, and thinke them counterfeit: but becauſe

becauſe we have no other records extant, they follow this order. Others reckon 20 Kings more, together with *Sardanapalus*, making him the eight and thirtieth King of the *Aſſyrians*. This King, as without all compare the moſt effeminate of them, continually ſitting amongſt harlots, ſpinning and carding with them, and ſo totally plunged in voluptuouſneſſe, that he would ſcarce ever ſhew himſelfe in publike. For this cauſe, two of his Rulers, *Belochus* of *Babylon*, and *Arbaces* of the *Medes*, alienating their affection from him, after they had emblazon'd his filthineſſe and lacivious neſſe up and downe amongſt the vulgar, made warre againſt him. Hee with his womaniſh troopes, having ſcarce joyn'd battell (ſuch was his bad ſucceſſe) fled to his palace, and there cauſing a great fire to bee made

See their names at the end of the Booke.

Sardanapalus.

made, threw himselfe and all his goods into it. In this deed onely, as a certaine writer saith, shewing himselfe a man. Afterwards these two Rulers divided the Monarchy betwixt them, *Belochus* was made King of *Babylon*, and *Arbaces* of the *Medes*. Thus *Sardanapalus* was the last King in that course when that Monarchy had stood 1300 yeares, for almost all their Kings lived exceeding long.

The Monarchy divided.

After it had stood 1300yeares

Belochus.
2 King. 15.
1 Chron. 5.

Belochus the nine and thirtieth, or if it seeme better, the first King of the *Assyrians* in the new Monarchy, compelled *Manasses* King of *Israel* to pay him Tribute: The Scripture calls him not *Belochus*, but *Phul. Phul Assur*, Sirnamed, *Tiglath Pileser*, succeeded him. He tooke some certaine Cities in *Iudea*, and carried away the people captive into *Assyria*. *Achas* King of *Iuda*, in whose time

Phul. Assur.
2 King. 15.
2 Chro. 28.

time the Prophet *Iſaias* lived, deſir'd ayd from this *Tiglath* againſt the King of *Syria*, and ſent him preſents. After *Tiglath* followed *Salmanaſſar*, who after three yeares ſiege, tooke the City of *Samaria*, and caried away captive *Hoſea* King of *Iſrael*, and his people, and allowed them a dwelling place, in his owne Dominions, even amongſt the *Medes*, as the Scripture ſaith, whereupon ſome gather that hee rul'd alſo over the *Medes*. His ſucceſſor, *Senacherib* kept his Court in the City of *Ninivie*: Hee made *Ezekiah* King of *Iuda* tributary to him, and ſoone after beſieged *Ieruſalem* with a mighty Army, and by his Ambaſſadors, exhorting the people to make a revolt: and ſcoffed at their King, who hoped for helpe from his God. But he eſcaped not unpuniſht, for God by his Angell in one night

Salmanaſſar.

2 King. 18.

Senacherib.
2 King. 18.

2 King. 19.

night slew 185000 of his men, as a little before he had confirmed it to *Ezechias* by his Prophet *Isaiah*. After his returne home, he was slaine by his own Sons. Till this time, the *Babylonians* after *Sardanapalus* his overthrow, were in subjection to the *Assyrians*, *Senacherib*, as wee said before, having receiv'd such a destruction at *Jerusalem*, and not long after slaine by his owne Sons: there followed a great change in the State of the Kingdome, which was then divided. For the two brothers *Adramalech*, and *Sarazer*, who had committed the parricide fled. Notwithstanding they levied forces, and prepared Armes against their brother *Assaradon*, who after his fathers death had seized upon the Kingdome: having formerly govern'd the Common-wealth in his fathers [p] absence. *Merodach* Governour

Isay. 37.

Tob. 1.

Assaradon. 2 King. 19.

[p] Isay. 37. *Merodach.*

nor of *Babylon* taking hold on this faire occaſion, for his owne good ſucceſſe, revolted, proclaiming warre: and having by degrees, partly by favour, partly by force, drawne in the neighbouring countries round about him, to his party, and overcome *Aſſaradon* in the 12 yeare of his raigne: annexed the whole Empire of the *Aſſyrians* to the *Babylonians*, and raigned [q] forty yeares after. Many reckon, next after him *Benmerodach*, and *Nabuchodonozor* the firſt of that name: but ſeeing the holy Scripture diſcovers nothing hereabouts: nor can we raſhly give credit to others, wee'le ranke that *Nabuchodonozor* whom the Scripture makes much mention of, next in order after *Merodach*. Hee therefore within few yeeres after his entrance, made warre with the [r] *Ægyptians*: and tooke from them the whole coun-

2 King.20. 2 Chr.32.

q Iſay 39. and 50. *Benmerodach.* *Nebuchodonozor.*

Nebuchodonozor the Great.

r 2King.24. Ierem. 46.

Country there from *Euphrates* to [s] *Peleusium*, made tributary to him [t] *Ioachim* King of *Iuda*, and in the eight yeare of his raigne caried away captive to *Babylon*, his sonne *Iechonias*, together with his chiefe men, and atificers, not onely of the City of *Ierusalem*, but also of the whole Countrey. In the eighteenth yeare of his raigne he tooke * *Ierusalem*, after two yeares siege, and within a while after [u] sackt, burnt it, and broke downe the wals, carried away most part of the people, putting out king *Zedekias* his eies, and killing his Sons, and Noblemen. The Prophet *Ieremy* had foretold this calamity in the first yeare of *Nebuchodonozors* raigne: and from this time we must reckon the 70 yeares captivity of *Babylon*. *Nabuchodonozor*, about the foure and twentieth yeare of his raigne (having overcome the kings of the

[s] *Suidas* calls this *peleusium*, the Key of Ægypt. It is now called *Damietta*.

[t] 2 Kin. 24.

* 2 King. 15. 2 Chr. 36.

[u] Ierm. 52.

Ierm. 25.

the [x] *Ammorites* and *Moabites*) paſſed into *Ægypt* with an army: where having got poſſeſſion of all that Country, afterwards begunne his Monarchy. In the ſecond yeare of his Monarchy, as the learned of our times collect, he ſaw in his dreame a great Image, whoſe head was of gold, the breſt and armes of ſilver, the belly and thighes of braſſe, the legges of yron, the feet part of iron, part of clay. When hee awak't, and could not call to mind what he had dreamt, but yet remain'd mightily aſtoniſht, calling together his Magicians, and SouthSayers, charged them under paine of death to interpret his dreame. *Daniel* a young man Captive with the reſt of his Nation, brought thither from *Ieruſalem*, ſignified that hee could ſatisfie the kings deſire: being brought forth, firſt hee ſhewed what the dreame

x Ier. 46.

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY CAMBRIDGE

dreame was, and afterwards interpreted the meaning thereof. The Image, sayd hee, signifies the foure chiefe Monarchies of the world, which are to succeed, in order, and turning his speech to the King himselfe; Thou, sayd hee, whom God hath invested with supreame power and glory, to whom he hath given rule over all men, beasts of the field, fowles of the ayre; Thou I say art the Golden Head of that Image. After thee another kingdome of silver shall arise, worse then this of thine: afterwards the third kingdom of brasse which shall beare rule farre and wide: but the fourth kingdome shall be of yron, for as yron breaketh in pieces, and subdueth all things, so also shall the fourth and last, breake in pieces all the rest, and bring them in subjection to it. This therefore is the first and formerly never heard

heard of propheſie, of the foure Monarchies, which God revealed to us by his Prophet *Daniel*. A thing truely worthy to bee committed to memory, becauſe in a few words it compriſes the Hiſtory of all ages, untill the end of the world: as afterwards I am to ſpeake of. Now it ſufficeth how at this time firſt of all, God hath diſcovered to us, the order and ſucceſſive courſe of the Monarchies. That place in *Daniel* alſo, manifeſts more clearely of what great puiſſance this *Nabuchadonozor* was: where the Scripture compares him to a Tree, whoſe height reached to heaven, which as it were overſhadowed the whole earth: whoſe leaves were very faire, and moſt abundantly loaden with fruit, whereby all creatures were fed and fatned: in whoſe branches and boughes, all manner of fowles dwelt and

Dan. 4.

made their nests. This therefore is the first Monarchy: which, as it was exceedingly amplified in this Kings raigne, and hoisted up to the very highest step. So also it fell away, and in his Nephewes time was quite extinguished, even as God had denounced by *Daniel*, and other of his Prophets. This *Nabuchadonozor* raigned three and forty yeares. It would quite the cost if all mortall men, especially Kings and Princes, would read and diligently consider, with how dreadfull a spectacle and example, God (as *Daniel* sets it downe, revenged his pride: that so they might the more reverence Gods divine Majestie, and performe that office to the people, which is committed to them. His son *Evilmerodach* succeeded him; hee raigned 30. yeares, and his successor *Assur* three yeares. *Labassardach*, who raigned seven

Dan. 4. and 5.

Evilmerodach. 2 King. 25. Ierm. 52.

Assur.

Labassardach.

y seven yeares, succeeded him: After him *Balthazar* bore rule five yeares: Many reckon them after this manner, but the learned of our time, omitting two of them, put *Balthazar* next after his father *Evilmerodach*, and write that he raigned 14. years, which is very necessary to make the perfect number of 70 yeares, during which space the *Iewes* were in captivity to the *Babylonians*: sithence their captivity begun in the nineteenth yeare of *Nabuchodonozors* raigne. Those who observe this order, and leave out the two Kings before spoken of, follow the Tract of Scripture, and especially the Prophet *Ieremies* testimony who prophesied, that the *Iewes* should serve the King of *Babel*, his son, and his sons sonne, but in this poin let every man have his judgment free to himselfe. How beit *Balthazar*, as the Scrip-

y *Metasthenes*; and others say but 6.

Balthazar.

Ierem. 25.

Dan. 5.

Dan. 5.

ture mentions, was the last King of the *Babylonians*, and in this all Writers agree. As for the manner of the taking of *Babylon*, many Authors describe it. *Daniel* also mentions how God denounced to this King, his emminent, and even present calamity, and relates how the government of the Monarchy, after that King was slaine, was translated to *Darius* the *Mede*, then 62. yeares of age. Many Writers call this *Darius Cyaxes*, who was the son of *Astiages*, eighth King of the *Medes*, whom *Daniel* cals *Assuerus*, who having no issue male, bestowed his daughter in marriage upon *Cyrus* the King of *Persia's* sisters sonne: and being provokt to enter into a warre with the King of the *Assyrians*, sent for aid to *Cyrus*, who leading his forces thither, and being made Generall of the whole Army, returned

returned Conqueror, having taken that most powerfull [z] Cities. It is recorded that *Darius* lived not above a yeare after this victory. And then, when *Darius* was yet living after the taking of *Babylon*, and the children of *Israel*, had by this time, remained captive in *Babylon*, almost 70. yeares: God revealed in more ample manner to *Daniel*, according to his prayers in that behalfe, who made knowne the time to the Prophet *Jeremy*, foreshewer of the captivity: and did not only confirme the neerenesse of their freedome, but also shewed what time the *Messias* should come, who should satisfie for the sinnes of men.

[z] *Babylon.* Dan. 9.

Jer. 25. and 29. Dan. 9.

After *Darius* his death, the sway of government was committed to his sonne in law *Cyrus*, and this is the beginning of the second Monarchy; for now *Cyrus* alone held in his

Cyrus founder of the second Monarchy of the *Persians*, when the first of the *Assyrians*, had stood about 1538 yeares, this was about 3434.

owne hands, *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Persia*, even to the *Ionian* Sea, as *Thucidides* hath it, having before his winning of *Babylon*, taken *Crœsus*, that most puissant King of *Lydia*. So this *Cyrus* is first King of the *Persians*, and Founder of the second Monarchie. This most renowned Prince, having vanquisht the *Babylonians*, made warre with the *Scythians*, whither going with his Army, and at length intrapped, and invironed by his enemies, was there slaine. In the beginning of his raigne, after the taking of *Babylon*, hee permitted the *Iewes* to returne home againe out of Captivity, that they might re-edifie the Temple, and the Citie of *Ierusalem*; and to that purpose bestowed very liberally out of his owne Treasure. God by his Prophet *Isay*, had foretold him by name, some ages before he was borne.

2 Chro. 39

Isay 44. and 45.

Xenophon

Xenophon brings him in, discoursing with his sonnes before his death, about the immortality of the soule, as *Cicero* hath it; who interprets that place, as all others, very elegantly. *Cyrus* reached the 70. yeare of his age, and raigned 30. yeares, being 40. yeares old at the beginning of his raigne. His sonnes name was *Cambyses*, whom, when hee went from home to the *Scythian* warre, he set over his kingdome. Hee (his Father being absent and in employments) tooke *Egypt*. In warre indeed hee was renowned, but otherwise vicious, and did not represent his Fathers vertues. Among the rest of his filthy and savage deeds, he commanded his owne brother to be slaine treacherously. *Plato* in his bookes, which hee writ of the Lawes, reports how *Cyrus* was very much to blame, for that hee brought up

Cambyses.

his ſons effeminately, amongſt women: who, when they grew into riper yeares, being corrupted by flatteries, for the moſt part abuſing their eares; did after their Fathers deceaſe, indanger one anothers life.

Darius the ſonne of *Hiſtaſpis* ſucceeded *Cambiſes*, ſecond King of the *Perſians*, who ſurvived his Father but a ſhort ſpace. And by reaſon that many of his ſubjects, and together with the reſt, the *Babylonians* did (after *Cyrus* his death, and ſo great an overthrow of his Army) revolt from the Kingdome of *Perſia*: Hee tooke Armes at the firſt ſtep of his raigne, and reunited them to his Empire, having after a long ſiege taken *Babylon* alſo by helpe of [a] *Zopyrus*. Within a while after, hee made warre againſt the *Athenians*, who upon a ſudden, muſtering up their

Darius the ſonne of *Hyſtaſpis*.

[a] He mangled himſelfe, cutting off his eares, noſe, and lips, faigning that *Darius* had ſo puniſht him, for ſpeaking in the *Babylonians* behalfe: whereupon they receiv'd him, and by that policie, he got the Citie for *Darius*.

their forces, not expecting any aid from the *Lacedemonians*, did at *Marathon*, with about 10000. men, *Militiades* being their Leader, overcome his huge [b] Army. *Darius* was aminded to renew the warre, but death prevented him, in his very first attempt: whose sonne and successor, *Xerxes* in the tenth yeare after the battle at *Marathon*, as *Thucidides* relates, came with an [c] innumerable Army, with intent to subdue all *Greece*. Hereupon the chiefe managing of these warres, was by common consent committed to the *Lacedemonians*, because they bore greatest sway all over *Greece*: but the *Athenians* followed *Themistocles* his Counsaile, quitting their Citie, leaving their wives and children in one place or other, betooke themselves to their shippes, and joyning battle with the

[b] It consisted of 600000. men.

Xerxes.

[c] Some confine it to 1000000 but *Iustine* extends it to 2000000 in *Herodotus* to more

In a little Fishers boat.

enemy at *Salamina*, overcame him. That victory was very commodious to all *Greece* in generall; for *Xerxes* being also expelled their Counttey, did by an infortunate and a dishonourable flight, returne home, and the *Grecians* likewise after his departure. But the *Athenians* having a Navie of 400. sayle, or thereabouts, coasting on further, and pursuing their enemies, tooke the towne of *Sestos* upon *Hellespont*, which the *Persians* held: and there wintering, afterwards returned home, gathered together their dispersed wives and children, and repaired the walls of their Citie (which the enemy burnt when hee tooke it) and fortified the Port. This warre of the *Persians*, or (as *Thucidides* cals it) of the *Medes*, hapned, as *Cicero* writes, almost at the very same time, with the *Volscian* warre, where the

the exiled Romane *Coriolanus* was Generall: and that was in the 266. yeare after the building of *Rome*. *Herodotus*, before *Thucidides*, writ of this *Perſian* warre. *Cicero* cals him the Father of Hiſtory, but reports that his writings are ſtuft with an infinite company of Fables; The *Lacedemonians* were ſore offended at this fortification of the *Athenians*, but ſith they could not tell how to amend themſelves, buried all in murmuring ſilence: and both they, as alſo the reſt of the *Grecians*, together with the *Athenians*, joyned forces, tooke the Ile of *Cyprus*, and the Citie [d] *Bizantium*, which the *Perſians* held.

Amongſt the reſt of the *Lacedemonian* Captaines in this warre, *Pauſanias* was one, who (being condemned of treaſon) after he was returned home, and lay beſieged in a cer-

d Now called *Conſtantinople*.

certaine Sanctuary, was famished to death with hunger. *Themistocles* also (being in like manner accused) fled. Soone after this, *Greece* was tossed up and downe with sundry wars and dissentions; partly forraigne, and partly domesticall, which *Thucidides* pithily relates. But at length, in the fiftieth yeare after *Xerxes* departure out of *Greece*, as *Cicero* relates it after *Thucidides*, that cruell warre sprung out when the whole Countrey of [e] *Peloponnesus* conspired against the *Athenians*; *Pericles*, *Anaxageras* his scholler, being their Leader in that warre; who, as *Aristophanes* reports, lightned, thundred, and set all *Greece* on fire with his tongue. For these in times past, were the masterpieces of prowesse and eloquence. On the other part, *Archidamus* King of the *Lacedemonians* had supreame command

e Now called *Morea*.

mand. *Thucidides* who writ of this warre, was both equall to, and emulous of *Pericles*. *Sophocles* the Tragicall Poet, was, as *Cicero* writes, *Pericles* his collegue in the Generalſhip.

Now let us return to *Xerxes*. Hee, by reaſon of ſuch his bad ſucceſſe, being growne into contempt, was ſlain by his own ſubjects. His Son *Artaxerxes Long-hand* ſucceeded him. To him fled the exiled [f] *Themiſtocles*, whom we ſpake of a little before, and there ended his life, and was buried at *Magneſia*. After *Long-hand*, *Darius Nothus* raigned, who married his owne ſiſter. In the beginning of this Kings raigne, happened the aforeſaid *Peloponneſian* warre. And the *Athenians*, though they had remora's enough beſides, yet in the fourth yeare of this warre, as *Thucidides* recites in his third booke, they ſent a Navie into *Sicily*

Artaxerxes Long-hand.

[f] Poyſoned himſelfe, becauſe hee would not goe with *Artaxerxes* to fight againſt his owne country. *Darius Nothus.*

Sicily, under pretence to ayde the *Leontinians*, againſt the *Syracuſans*, but their intent was to bring that Iland under their ſubjection, that ſo they might more conveniely ſubdue *Greece*, and afterwards when they were returned, and foſtered their owne actions, *Hermocrates* of *Syracuſa*, was the firſt that moved the *Sicilians* to live in peace, laying aſide all grudges, for the *Athenians* had laid ſnares of bondage to intrappe the liberty of their whole country, and his perſwaſion tooke effect. This was in the ſeventh yeare of this warre.

Three yeares after this, the *Athenians* and *Peloponneſians*, concluded a truce for fifty yeares, but it held not full ſeven: for even then many outrages were broached, and though the peace were not quite aboliſhed, and gappes of offences

offences committed, were ever anon ſtopt up againe by truces; yet in the 17 yeare, they burſt forth againe into open warre with full forces, and this ſecond warre continued ten yeares. Then the *Athenians* ſend over againe their Navie, moſt exquiſitely furniſhed, into *Sicily*. The chiefe Commanders, whereof among the reſt, were *Alcibiades* and *Nicias*. *Nicias* very earneſtly (declaiming certaine Orations to that purpoſe) diſſwaded them from this voyage: but *Alcibiades* perſwaded the contrary. The *Peloponneſians* gave ayd to the *Sicilians*: at length, the *Athenians* incounter with their enemies in the port of *Syracuſa*: but after a doubtfull and dangerous battell, were all of them put to flight and ſlaine. In the meane time, the *Lacedemonians* and their confederates, conclude a league againſt the *Athenians* with

with *Darius* King of *Perſia*. *Tiſſaphernes* was *Darius* his Ambaſſador. Next after, *Codrus*, *Polydor* of *Sparta*, and *Ariſtomenes* of *Meſſene*: theſe following are for the moſt part reputed the chiefe and moſt renowned Captaines of the Greekes: ſome whereof performed worthy ſervice for the whole Country of *Greece*, and every one for his owne country at the leaſt: as, *Miltiades*, *Leonidas*, *Themiſtocles*, *Pericles*, *Ariſtides*, *Panſanias*, *Xantippus*, *Leotychidas*, *Cimon*, *Conon*, *Epaminondas*, *Leoſtnenes*, *Aratus* of *Sicyon*, *Philopœmen*. Moſt of theſe were at length baniſhed their Countries. *Cicero* deſcribes the Port of *Syracuſa*, and reports how the *Athenian* Navie onely, which conſiſted of 300 ſhips, did within mans memory, invade it, and was vanquiſhed and overthrowne within the ſame, by reaſon of the

the advantage of the Situation and nature of the place, and Port it selfe: and then first of all was the puissance of that City borne downe, abated and overwhelmed, and shipwracke was made of Nobility, Government and Glory. *Thucidides* relates that the circuit of *Sicily* is as much as a great vessell can saile round about in eight dayes space: and that the Iland is distant from the Continent, about twenty 5 furlongs.

g Two miles and a halfe.

Darius had two sonnes, *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, and *Cyrus*; the first whereof succeeded his father, and *Cyrus* governed *Ionia*: but not being content with his owne share, made warre upon the King his brother, and was there overthrown and slaine. *Marcus Portius Cato*, as *Cicero* hath it, cals this *Cyrus* the yonger King of *Persia*, a man of an excellent wit,

Artaxerxes Mnemon.

and

and the glory of his Kingdome. Hee commends him also for his delight in husbandry, as *Xenophon* writes of him: for this *Xenophon* was one of his Souldiers, and very familiar with him, and for that cause was afterwards driven into exile by the *Athenians* who were in league and amity with *Mnemon*. After *Masemon* raigned *Ochus*, his third and youngest Sonne. *Darius* the last of all succeeded. Against him, *Alexander*, King *Philip* of *Macedon* his sonne made warre: who after hee had subdued *Thebes* and pacified *Greece*, set forwards into *Asia*, and in three battels overthrew *Darius*, taking his mother, wife, and daughters, prisoners. *Darius* offered him very large conditions, and part of his kingdome to the river of *Euphrates*: but hee refused both, and ceased not, till hee had overthrowne him

Ochus Darius.

him; for when *Darius* saw that hee could not make his peace upon these conditions, hee renewes the war the third time, and comming against him with a most puissant Army, was the third time overthrowne, and as hee fled, slaine by his owne men: when, together with him, the Monarchy of *Persia*, which hath stood 200 yeares was extinguished.

Alexander by these famous victories, brought under his subjection almost all the countries lying Eastward, transtated the Imperiall seat out of *Asia*, into *Europe*, and founded the third Monarchie. After this, he made warres in *India*, but, such is the weakenesse of mortall men; those blasts of ful-handed and indulgent fortune, could not breath upon him, but must needs puffe him up with ambition: when having played many insolent prankes, and in

The third Monarchie of the Greekes founded by *Alexander* the Great about 3609. after the *Persian* Monarchy had stood about 200 yeares.

a manner commanded divine worſhip to be given him: comming to *Babylon*, there dyed of a Fever, or (as many write) of poyſon, being 33 yeares of age, and having raigned 12 yeares, *Calanus* an Indian, as *Cicero* relates, foretold him of his death, whom as hee was going to be [b]burnt *Alexander* asked if he had any thing to ſay, O yes, quoth he, I ſhall ſee thee ere it be long. Within a few dayes after *Alexander* breathed his laſt, which was (as it is commonly taken) in the hundred and fourteenth [i]*Olimpiad*, and in the foure hundred and ninth yeare after the building of the City of [k]*Rome*, which is 322 yeares before the birth of Chriſt. Hee was a very devout lover of good Arts, and moſt liberall towards learned men: and is therfore highly extold in many of their workes. He delighted much in *Homers* Poems,

[b] He cauſed himſelfe to be burnt, following the ancient cuſtome of the chiefe men of his Nation.

[i] Games in honor of *Iupiter* celebrated every fift yeare; they begun *Anno mundi* 3286

[k] Moſt authors (as *Mebrunius* notes) agree that he dyed in the 429 yeare after the building of *Rome*.

ems, and though we reade that hee was never without many learned men about him to record his acts: yet when hee stood before *Achilles* his tomb in *Sigeum*: O happy yonng man, said he, that hast found such an Herald as *Homer* to proclaime thy virtues. For as hee would (rather then any others) have *Apelles* his [1] Pictor, and *Lysippus* his [2] Fictor: so would hee have his worth extold and commended to the memory of posterity, by such as in setting forth his glory, could purchase renowne to their owne wits. He imployed his Tutor *Aristotle*, about describing the nature of all living creatures, and for that purpose procured certaine thousands of men, throughout *Greece* and *Asia*: as Graziers, Huntsmen, Fishermen, Fishmongers, Fowlers, and many more such like, to give him information of each crea-

[1] Painter.
[2] Statuist.

creature. It's written that hee gave to the Author himſelfe in recompence of his labour, 800 Talents, which amounts as the learned of our times collect, to 1480 Crownes. He ſent *Xenocrates* the Philoſopher 50 Talents by his Ambaſſador, which came to 1030 Crownes: which when hee refuſed, and ſent him word backe againe by his Ambaſſadors that he had no need of ſo much money: *What*, ſaid he, *has hee no friend whom hee may benefit by them?*

In his tender yeares, when he was *Ariſtotles* Scholler, hee was, as *Cicero* writes, endued with a moſt excellent wit, and exceeding great modeſty, but afterwards advanced with the title of King, hee grew proud, cruell and deboiſt. Hiſtoriographers tell wondrous ſtories of *Darius* his gorgeous pompe, delicious paſtimes, and riotous exceſſe: for hee kept within his

his Tents Cookes of all kinds, Hucksters, crammers of fowle, Artificers, clerks of his kitchin, and Confectioners: lest hee should be unprovided of any meanes that might increase his bodily pleasure. Many writers speake of the Kings of *Persia*, their solemnities and sumptuous provision in their daily banquets elswhere. They were wont to keepe many wives, as *Cicero* writes, and to those they gave certaine Cities, that such a City should find such a woman with all manner of attire for her head, and such a City with this or that apparell. Such was *Darius* his end, as I formerly recited, who as hee fled from *Alexander*, drinking foule water polluted with dead corpes denyed that ever in all his life hee drunke a more pleasant draught: for he never drunk when hee was a thirst, before that time.

After

After *Alexanders* death, his ſpacious Empire was divided amongſt his Nobles, *Ptolomeus*, *Laomedon*, *Antigonus*, *Caſſander*, *Leonatus*, *Eumenes*, *Python*, *Lyſimachus*, *Antipater*, *Meleager*, *Seleucus*: but the chiefe of thoſe was *Seleucus*, afterwards made King of *Syria*, as alſo *Ptolmeus* of *Egypt*, *Antigonus* of the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Caſſander* of the *Macedons* and *Greece*, having quite cut off all *Alexanders* alliance. This *Lyſimachus* is hee, whom *Alexander* being one time angry with, cauſed to be ſhut up with a Lion: but when he heard how hee had killed the beaſt, highly eſteemed of him. Now moſt grievous warres, as it is common, aroſe betwixt thoſe forenamed ſucceſſors and their ſonnes and Nephewes: for the mind once corrupted with ambition, can admit no reſt, but plots how to augment its owne power, by committing injurie upon

upon other men. And all theſe Countries being moſt miſerably afflicted with thoſe wars, by reaſon they were continuall, by little and little grew into ſubjection to the *Romanes*, who extending their Dominions farre and wide, made up the fourth and laſt Monarchy, whereof I am now to ſpeake.

But amongſt *Alexanders* ſucceſſours in the Kingdome of *Egypt*, *Ptolomeus Philadelphus* was one, a moſt laudable Prince: For hee, as much as in him lay, kept peace with all, ſtirred up the liberall ſciences, appointed ſtipends for ſchollers, erected a moſt copious Library, and commanded the bookes of *Moſes*, and the Prophets, to be tranſlated into the Greeke tongue.

The beginning of the Citie of *Rome* therefore, was at that time when *Salmanaſſer* before mentioned, raigned in *Aſſyria*,

Rome built, 3212.

that is in the first yeare of the seventh *Olympiad*, according to *Plutarch*, and of *Rome* built 3252. When as, almost 400. yeares before *Eneas* had begun his raigne in [n] *Latium*, after the *Trojan* warres, which *Homer* left to the memory of posterity: of those [o] time, as likewise of his [p] countrey, there is no certainty extant: onely *Cicero* writes that many yeares before the building of *Rome*, and *Romulus*, there was such a man. Howsoever, there is no prophane writing of more antiquity then his Poem: for as *Horace* saith;

Many brave Worthies
flourisht ere those dayes,
When Agamemnon *shin'd,*
whose bootelesse praise
Hath not the force
t'attract one liquid eye:
For lasting night
with blacke obscurity.

n A part of *Italy*.
o *Herodotus Dion: Halicarnass. Solinus*, and *Gellius* (as *Meibomius* notes) writeth of his time.
p *Gellius* also writes of his Countrey.

In

In ignorance invelopt
hath their names,
Wanting an Herauld
to proclaime their fames.

Cicero also signifies as much, who writes that there was not the tract of an Orator to bee seene before *Homers* time.

As for the originall of *Rome*, it was but meane, and in a manner contemptible, but because God had so ordained, as afterwards it shall be declared, it grew up to the height of potencie. In their first beginning seven Kings raigned over them 244. yeares. And in *Servius Tullus* the sixt Kings raigne, *Solon* and *Pisistratus* flourisht in *Athens*, and *Pythagoras* in *Italy*, as *Cicero* writes. At what time *Tarquinius* the proud was expelled. He writes also, that in this *Servius Tullus* his raigne, *Athens* had then stood about 700. yeares. Ha-

ving expelled their Kings, the government of their State was translated to two Consuls, whose office was annuall. The first was *Lucius Iunius Brutus*, one no lesse vehement and diligent about expulsion of the Kings, and setting up the liberty of his Countrey, then vigilant and valiant in preservation thereof. For when his owne two sonnes, *Titus* and *Tiberius*, amongst other Noblemens sonnes of *Rome*, had communed together in private consultations, about calling in againe of the *Tarquins:* after the matter was openly disclosed, he put them to open death. Hee also abrogated his Collegue *Tarquinius Collatinus* his authority, who was his associate in expelling of the Kings, as also coadjutor in his counsels. *Cicero* defends this fact as just, and saith it was no lesse profitable then honourable to his

his Countrey, that thereby both the name of the *Tarquins*, and the remembrance of the Kingdome might bee extinguiſhed. But in this variable fortune of the *Romanes*; when all [q] *Hetruria* had conſpired againſt them, three hundred of the [a] *Fabies* marched out of the Citie againſt the Enemy, and were all ſlaine, ſaving a Child which was left at home, and ſo left alive: who afterwards raiſed the houſe againe: this hapned in the thirty three yeare after the expulſion of the Kings. By reaſon of the troubleſome ſtate of the Common-wealth, Ambaſſadours were ſent into *Greece*, in the three hundred yeare after the building of the Citie, to fetch from thence, the Lawes which the Citie of *Rome* ſhould uſe. After their returne the forme of governement of the Common-wealth,

q *Tuſcanie.*

a 306. as *Livie, Florus, Ovid. &c.*

was changed, and the [r] *Decemvirs* were put in authority with the government thereof, but this order had not full three yeares: *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemvirs*, by his lewdneſſe, in violently carrying away a Virgin, daughter to *Lucius Virginius*, a Citizen of *Rome*, to ſerve his luſt: gave occaſion to the people wholly to ſubvert this order. So the government returned to the Conſuls; but thoſe two, held it but a few yeares: and then two [s] Tribunes of the Souldiers were conſtituted with Conſular authority: but they before their yeare was out, left off their office, and made roome againe for the Conſuls: and at this time, which was in the three hundred & fifteenth yeare of *Rome* built, *Lucius Quintus Cincinnatus* the Dictator, cauſed *Caius Servilius Hala*, maſter of the Cavallery, to kill *Spurius*

r Tenne Noblemen appointed to governe in ſtead of Conſuls.

s Much like our Knight Marſhals at this day.

Spurius Melius, and alſo pluckt downe his houſe, becauſe hee endeavoured by his laviſh liberality of corne in the Citie, to procure the Kingdome. Two yeares after this, the government was reduced to the Tribunes of the ſouldiers, who afterwards were not bipartite, but more were created at one and the ſame time, as the people pleaſed, and the ſtate of the Common-wealth required.

This kinde of government continued almoſt 70. yeares, and among the reſt in this office, flouriſht *Marcus Furius Camillus*, interiour to none for valour: who, though hee had done worthy ſervice, for the Common-wealth, yet his ingratefull countrey, thruſt him out into baniſhment, after hee had beene Tribune of the Souldiers the fourth time: but after hee had recovered the Citie out of the hand of the [t] *Gallia-*

[t] Inhabiting in and about *Sen* in *Gallia*.

Senones, who had taken it, and vanquiſht the enemy, was reſtored to his former dignity, and within two yeares after made [v] Dictator. A few yeares after this, *Marcus Manlius*, hee that defended the Capitoll againſt the *Gaules*, being ſuſpected of affecting ſoveraigntie, was pitcht headlong from the top of the hill *Tarpeium*, and a Law made, that no man deſcending from the ſtocke of any Senatour of the houſe of the *Manlies*, ſhould bee called *Marcus*. After this, *Camillus* was the ſeventh time created Tribune of the Souldiers; and being very old, ended his life in the 389. yeare after the building of *Rome*: the government being a yeare before his death, againe reduced to the Conſuls. The firſt whereof was a * *Plebeian*. In thoſe times flouriſht the moſt renowned Captaines of warre in

[u] He had power regall, and was never choſen, but when the Commonwealth was in great danger, and could not hold his place above halfe a yeare.

* One of the Commonalty.

in that Citie, ſuch as were *Marcus Valerius Corvinus, Titus Manlius Torquatus, Caius Martius Rutilus, Publius Decius Muſ. Papirius Curſor, Pubelius Philo, Lucius Volumnius,* and others.

One of which, namely, *Titus Manlius Torquatus*, one of the Conſuls, beheaded his owne ſonne, for that hee (contrary to his command, and out of his ranke) had enconntred his Enemy in a ſingle combat, although hee got the upperhand. *Publius Decius Mus* the other Conſull, in the battle againſt the *Latines*, devowed and bequeathed himſelfe to death for the *Roman* Army: when violently ruſhing into the thickeſt troopes of his enemies, by his death, re-eſtabliſhed the tottering ſtate of *Rome*. His ſonne, of his owne name, foure times Conſull, performed the like againſt the

Galli-Senoves, forty four yeares after that. At the ſame before mentioned time, in the [x] 420. yeares of *Rome* built, *Alexander* the Great, founder of the third Monarchy, as wee have above declared, flouriſhed and made his wars. *Titus Livius* compares *Lucius Papyrius Curſor* with him, and extending his diſcourſe as well for his owne as his Readers recreation, ſhews that he was able to have reſiſted *Alexander*, if happily hee had led his forces into *Europe*, after his conqueſt of *Aſia*, and made warre upon the *Romanes*. This before recited *Papyrius Curſor*, was indued with the very quinteſſence of valour: for, omitting other his valiant acts, when *Titus Veturius Calvinus*, and *Spurius Poſthumus Albinus* the two Conſuls, together with the whole Army at the [y] Forkes of *Candium*, were compelled by the

x Moſt Authors agree of 10. or 12 yeares before, viz. *Anno Mundi*, 3620. or 21.

y Made of ſpeares or javelings ſtucke in the ground, under which the conquered were to paſſe in diſhonour.

the *Lamuts*, to goe ignobly under the yoke, and had made a dishonourable peace with the enemy: Hee (being created Consull) vanquisht the late conquering Enemy, and put him to flight; as also when hee was Dictator, made his owne Master of the Chavallery an example, to teach what strict observance ought to bee had in military discipline. In this age also, and a little upwards, *Creece* brought forth men of transcendent learning: for then flourished *Socrates*, and from him, as from a certaine Fountaine, *Aristippus*, *Plato*, *Antisthenes*, *Speusippus*, *Aristotle*, *Dichaarchus*, *Xenocrates*, *Heraclides*, *Theophrastus*, *Polemo*, and *Strabo*, all of them Physiologers, and as *Cicero* cals them, Speculators, and hunters of Nature. Then also flourished most famous Orators, as *Gorgias*, *Protagoras*,

Pro

Prodicus, *Hippias*, *Isocrates*, *Lysias*, *Demosthenes*, *Hyperides*, *Æschines*, *Phalerius*, *Demetrius*. And Historiographers chiefly *Xenophon*, whom *Cicero* cals a *Socratist*, and *Calisthenes*, *Alexander* the Great his Companion.

In this age lived *Dionysius* the *Syracusan* Tyrant, to whom when *Plato* came and spoke freely concerning the duty of a Prince, hee put him in great danger of his life, as *Cicero* relates. This was hee who committed not the guard of his body to his allies, but to certaine strangers, and savage and barbarous people: hee who taught his daughters how to cut their haire, that they should not adventure their neckes under the Barbers hands; who suffered them not to use any manner of edge-toole, after they were come to yeares, but made them cindge his

his head and beard with red-hot walnut-ſhels: who reſorted to his wives oftentimes by night, but firſt made ſure to ſurvey and prie into all places: who not daring to ſhew himſelfe in the common Pulpits, was wont to ſpeake to the people out of a Tower; who ſhewed *Damocles* one of his Paraſites, what manner of felicity that of his was, which hee had boaſted of: for as he ſate in the middeſt of his choiſeſt delicates, with abundance and ſuperfluity of all manner of pleaſures; hee cauſed a glittering ſword, hanging by a briſtle of a horſes upper lip, to bee let downe, that it might hang over his necke.

About forty two yeares after *Alexanders* death, *Pyrrhus* King of the *Epirotes* came into *Italy*, and made warre with the *Romanes*. In his ſecond yeares warres, hee ſolicited the Se-

Senate about concluding of a peace and a league. But *Appius Claudius* both old and blind, who, as *Cicero* writes, had beene twice Consull before that, came into the Court, and dissuaded the Senate inclining to peace, from making any league with him, for, even in that case, wherein hee then was, hee had so much courage, as not to shrinke from any either private or publicke service. The Oration which hee then pronounced concerning *Pyrrhus*, when hee broke off the peace, was extant in *Ciceroes* dayes, as he himselfe witnesseth. At this time *Caius Fabritius Luscinus*, performed a wealthy piece of service for the Common-wealth, who being solicited by *Pyrrhus*, to revolt, contemned his most ample gifts, and large proffers: nor onely so, but also sent him backe againe, a certaine captived

tived runne-away, who had certified, that hee could take away the Kings life by poyſon. *Cicero* compares him with *Ariſtides* the *Athenian*. *Manni-us Curius Dentatus*, gave *Pyr-rhus* an utter overthrow, at his ſecond invaſion of *Italy*, and triumphed over him. This *Pyrrhus* was the firſt that ever brought Elephants into *Luca-nia*. And till this time (being almoſt five hundred yeares continuance) the *Romanes* were in warres with the inhabitants of *Italy* onely, amongſt whom the *Latines*, *Veientes*, *Æquies*, *Faliſcians*, *Samnites*, *Hetruri-ans* reſiſted very ſtoutly, ſome-times conquered, ſometimes conquering: who being at length ſubdued, and a peace ſetled; that moſt bloody warre againſt the *Carthaginians* ſprung up; the originall of which City, is by evident te-ſtimony, proved to bee farre more

more [z] ancient than *Rome*. This warre begunne in the foure hundred eighty fift yeare of *Rome* built: In which, that noble act, which hath report of performance by *Marcus Attilius Regulus* deserves singular commemoration, who, being taken prisoner by the *Carthaginians*, and sent by them to *Rome*, to treate of a peace and exchange of prisoners, with condition (except hee prevailed) to returne to his bondage: Hee, when hee came thither, perswaded the Senate the quite contrary way, & shewed that it was repugnant to the custome of the Common-wealth: but yet holding it a point of honor, to hold promise with his enemie, returned to *Carthage*, where hee was put to death with the most cruell kind of punishment: his eye-lids being cut away, and so bound fast in an engine, consumed to

z *Iosephus* writes that it was built within 143 yeares after *Solomons* Temple. The first *Punicke* or *Carthaginian* war began *Anno Mundi* 3967.

to death by waking. This warre proceeding, the *Romanes* had their firſt and fortunate ſea-fight in *Sicilie*, againſt *Hanno*, *Publius Divillius* Conſull: *Cicero* rankes this *Divillius*, *Manius Curius*, and *Caius Fabritius*, as alſo *Attilius Colatinus*, *Cneius*, and *Publius*, both *Scipioes*, *Aphricanus*, *Marcellus*, and *Fabius Maximus*, within the liſt of the moſt renowned Conſuls of *Rome*.

The yeare following, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio* Conſull, tooke the Ilands of *Corſica* and *Sardinia*. The *Carthaginian* warre, after it had laſted three and twenty yeares, was at laſt appeaſed, *Quintus Luctatius*, *Catulus Cerco*, and *Aulus Manlius*, Conſuls. Two yeares before this, was *Ennius* borne. Hee was elder than *Marcus Portius Cato*, (who cals him his familiar conſort) by five yeares. And *Rome* was now againe

Held 23 yeares.

againe intrapt with new warres againſt the [a] *Faliſcians*, [b] *Lygurians*, [c] *Illyrians*, [d] *Galles*, [e] *Boies*, [f] *Inſubrians*, who having at length overcome, the ſecond *Punicke* or *Carthaginian* warre burſt forth, in the twenty fourth yeare after the concluſion of peace. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, and *Titus Sempronius Longus*, then Conſulls. *Hannibal* was Captaine Generall in this warre, who ſack't the City of *Saguntum*, and bending his courſe through *Spaine* towards *Gallia*, and from thence to *Italy*, in three ſeverall battels, at [g] *Ticinum*, the River *Trebia*, and the Lake *Thraſimine*, overcame the *Romanes*. But *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, being created Dictator, and marching forth againſt the enemy, by *ſubtill and dilatory* withdrawing *from him*, weakened and tooke off the edge of his force and fury.

This

a Of *Tuſcane*.
b Of *Tuſcane* upon the ſea coaſt.
c *Sclavonians*.
d Of *Gallia* now *France*.
e *Bohemians*
f Of now *Lumbardy*.
The ſecond war which the *Carthaginians* begun, *Anno Mundi*, 3751.
g Now *Pauie*.

This was that very *Fabius*, whose fame *Ennius* celebrating, saith thus of him.

One mans delay, our safety hath regained.

Cicero accounts him a great Politician, and sayes, that hee could conceale, keepe silence, dissemble, insnare, and prevent, his enemies in their consultations. But after this, the *Romans* received a very great overthrow at [h] *Canna*, which struck such a horrid feare in the City, that many of the abler sort purposed to flie and forsake the City, but were reanimated and withdrawne from their intents by *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, *Publius* his sonne, a magnanimous young Gentleman, and then scarce foure and twenty compleat.

h A towne of *Apulia* in *Italy*.

The fourth yeare following, *Claudius Marcellus* tooke *Syracusa* after a long continuing siege. In the sacking of which City

City, the famous Mathematician *Archimedes* was ſlaine: who was drawing certaine Aſtronomicall figures in duſt, not dreaming of the conqueſt of his country. *Marcellus* having notice hereof, tooke his death wonderfull heavily, and commanded his body to be buried: not onely ſuffering the Conquered City to remaine in ſafety, as *Cicero* writes, but alſo left it ſo furniſhed, that it ſhould ſtand for a Monument of victory, humanitie, and clemencie. Moreover, as hee ſpeakes upon *Verres* the [i] *Prætors* arrivall there; in this victory of *Marcellus*, there were fewer men, than gods ſlaine: but *Livie* reports, that many abhominable examples of wrath, envie, and avarice were then and there ſhewed. *Cicero* when he was [k] *Queſtor* of *Sicilia*, having by ſome deſcription found out the place of

[i] Much like our Lord chiefe Iuſtice at this day.

[k] Much like our office of Lord Treaſurer.

Ar-

Archimedes buriall, ſhewed his tomb to the Senate of *Syracuſa* 137. years afterwards, although it was quite worne out of memory, growne over with briars and brambles, and unknowne to the very Citizens themſelves. He further reports that this City of *Syracuſa*, was the greateſt and moſt beautifull city in *Greece*, and that it was compact of foure very great Cities: the Iland, where was the fountaine of *Arethuſa*, having great ſtore of fiſh: *Acradania* where the market place * *Prado*, and * Senate-houſe ſtood: *Tyche*, where the Temple of *Fortune* ſtood: *Neapolis* built laſt of all, where the moſt ſpacious Theater was erected. Moreover this, of any forraigne Nation, was the firſt that entred into amitie and allegiance with the *Romans*, and was their firſt province, as the ſame *Cicero* teſtifies. *Hannibal*, ſoone after his victo-

* *Porticus.* The publick walking place for pleaſure, recreation, or exerciſe.
* *Curia.*

victory, compelled all *Campania* to bee yielded up to him: but his Army wintering at *Capua* with ſuperfluity of victuals and riot, became wholly disjointed and broken. The third yeare after the overthrow of *Syracuſa*, *Capua* was ſurrendred into the hands of the *Romanes*: and it was long and much demurred upon, whether or no, they ſhould quite deſtroy the City: at length they agreed to preſerve it, yet leſt it ſhould at any time afterwards, be able to raiſe any rebellion, their fields were quite taken away, all manner of authority both of Magiſtrates and Senators abrogated, as alſo the Councell of Eſtate, no Image of a Common-wealth left, but was appointed to bee a ſtore-houſe for fruit, the plowmens rendezvous, the countrey-mens market towne, and the common Garner and corne-

Cornehouſe for the country of *Campania*. Within two yeares after this, *Aſdrubal* brought over new Auxiliary Forces into *Italy*, but was ſlaine at the river of *Metaurum*, by *Marcus Livius Salinator*, & *Caius Claudius Nero*, Conſuls. In the meane while *Publius Cornelius Scipio* had good ſucceſſe in *Spaine*, after his Father and his uncle had loſt their lives there. Hee having recovered the whole province, returned to *Rome*, and being made Conſull, defired to bee authorized over *Africa*, that he might make war there. But *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, an aged grave Senator withſtood him very earneſtly; and urged that it was not fit to paſſe into *Africa*, but to joyne battell with *Hannibal*. *Scipio* contrary wiſe, that if warre were made with the *Carthaginians* within their owne Quarters, they muſt of neceſſity, be

con-

conſtrained to call home *Hannibal* out of *Italy*, in whom they ſetled their chiefe hopes and helpes. After much diſpute the Senate granted *Scipio* the Province of *Sicily*, and permits him, if it might be commodius to the Commonwealth, to paſſe over into *Africa*. Hee therefore at length ſets forward out of *Sicilie* into *Africa*: where, what hee had foretold the Senate by word, he confirmed by deed. For the *Carthaginians* having received ſome overthrowes by him, and being much endammaged, call backe *Hannibal*. Thus hee who for ſixteene yeares together had raged up and downe *Italy*, and pict out a place under the very walles of *Rome*, where to pitch his Tents was compelled to returne home, though ſore againſt his will and to his great griefe: where at length in his owne country quar-

quarrell, hee was vanquiſhed by *Scipio*, who ſoone after, by decree of the Senate, concluded a peace with the Enemy. Hereupon came his ſurname of *Africanus*.

Hannibal vanquiſhed. *An. mund.* 3797.

But here we muſt conſider, after what manner the *Romans* crept out of theſe moſt intricat ſtreights, for all their fortune now hung by a moſt ſlender threed; yet ſo it was deſtined, that they ſhould overſway all force and trouble, and become Lords of the whole earth. Some report that *Hannibal* foreſaw this, when hee heard of his brother *Asdrubals* overthrow. The words which he then uſed, *Horace* ſets them downe in that Ode, wherein he celebrates the fame of *Druſus* and his houſe; which being moſt learned and elegant, worthily amongſt other matters, deſerves commemoration by all of the younger ſort. Thus

Horace li. 4. Od. 4.

The Roman wars with *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, 3770.

the *Romanes* being at peace with the *Carthaginians*; beſides thoſe warres wherein they were employed, in *Italy*, *Iſtria*, and *Luſitania*: made ſharpe warre againſt *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, who infeſted the Countrey of *Greece*. In this warre *Titus Quintus Flamininus* was Generall, who at length, getting the upper hand of the Enemy, did by decree of the Senate reſtore *Greece*, to its former liberty: and amongſt other injunctions, prohibited King *Philip* from making war in any place, out of his owne Territories, without a decree of the Senate. To this warre another ſucceeded, againſt *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, who paſſing over into *Europe*, was overthrowne, and expelled *Greece*, by *Manius Glabrio*, *Philip* King of *Macedon*, aiding the *Romanes* in that warre. Thoſe before recited Kings of *Aſia*,

The Roman wars with *Antiochus*, King of *Syria*, 3777.

Asia, *Syria*, and *Macedonia*, descended from their posterity, who, as wee have aboue related, divided the Provinces amongst them after *Alexander* the Great his death. For *Carthage* being pacified, and all *Italy* brought under subjection; the *Romanes* having subdued their neighbouring Countries of *Europe*, both by sea and land, were now growne to that height, that Kings and people farre remote implored their patronage.

After this manner the *Egyptians* (whose King *Ptolemy Epiphanes* was, a very young Prince, and not of ability by reason of his non-age to governe them) being brought into emminent danger by *Antiochus* the Great, sent over their Ambassadors to *Rome*, petitioning the Senate to undertake the tuition of their young King. Hereupon the

Senate enjoyned *Antiochus* to forbeare *Egypt*: He hereat incenſed, but more eſpecially, when *Hannibal* who was fled to him, and remained his gueſt, very earneſtly perſwaded him to the warre: ſtrucke over with a Navie into *Greece*, and there, as wee reported before, was put to flight. Whereupon the *Romans* ſetting forthwith an Armado, purſue him, and ſtriking over into *Aſia*, overthrew in a maine battle, and beat him backe beyond the Mountaine *Taurus*. *Cicero* relates, how after this overthrow hee was wont to ſay, that the *Romans* had done him a very good turne, for now (being freed from too exceeding great government) hee would containe himſelfe within the moderate bounds of a Kingdome. *Lucius Cornelius Scipio*, *Publius Scipio Africanus* his brother, was Captaine Generall

nerall in this warre, thereupon ſurnamed *Aſiaticus*.

After this, *Marcus Fulvius Nobilior*, vanquiſhed the [l] *Ætolians*, and triumpled over them. And *Publius Scipio Africanus*, after his returne home out of *Aſia*, (whither hee was ſent in Ambaſſige to his brother, in time of this warre) being croſt by the [m] Tribunes of the Commons: withdrew himſelfe into his village of *Liturnum*, and there, this man of tranſcendent worth, ended his life, being as many writes, 52. yeares old, of the ſame age with *Marcus Portius Cato*. In that Dialogue, which *Cicero* writ of old age, hee brings in *Cato* ſpeaking very affectionately and honourably, both of his age and ſtudies; but moſt eſpecially extolling his magnanimity: Howbeit *Livie* writes, that *Cato* was his enemy, and was wont much to

l A certaine people of *Greece*.

m Officers appointed for protection of the Commons againſt the Nobles.

Sleidan (as *Meibomius* notes) miſtakes *Africanus*, for *Quintus Fabius Cunctator*, whom *Cicero* ſpake of.

disquiet himselfe with the odious envie, that hee bore against him for his fortitude. *Cicero* commends him for his dexterous celerity in dispatch of busines.

At this time flourisht those Poets, *Ennius*, *Plautus*, and *Nevius*.

After *Antiochus* his overthrow, *Hannibal* fled to *Perusias*, King of *Bythinia*: and (when the *Romanes* desired to have him delivered into their hand) by a draught of poyson finished his life.

Hannibal poysoneth himselfe, *An.* 3876.

To *Antiochus*, his son *Antiochus Epiphanes* succeeded, who likewise practised by treachery to have seized upon the Kingdome of *Egypt*, for that he was uncle to *Ptolemy Philometer* King of *Egypt*, who succeeded after his Fathers death; hereupon, professing himselfe to be the young Kings Tutor, purposed to dispatch him

him, and ſo transferre the ſway of governement into his owne hands, but his plot being diſcovered, the *Romanes* (whom the *Egyptians* had againe ſolicited for aid) ſent over to him in Ambaſſage *Caius Popilius Lænas*, who comming to conference with *Antiochus*, commanded him in the name of the *Romans* to depart from *Alexandria*, which hee then beſieged: who deſiring time to deliberate upon it; *Lænas* with a little rod drew a circle round about him in the place where hee ſtood, and in flat tearmes charged him to give his anſwer what hee would doe, before hee ſtirred out of that Ring. Hee hereat diſmaid, and not being ignorant of the puiſſance of the *Romans*, promiſed peace.

Thoſe paſſages are onely for this purpoſe mentioned, that it may appeare how the *Romans*,

from theſe ſmall beginnings, gathered ground ſtep by ſtep, and climbed up to the higheſt branch of government. For now their puiſſance having out-ſtript the bounds of *Italy*, made an impreſſion into ſeverall Quarters of the world: but a great part of their labour yet remained towards the keeping in together the ponderous burthen of this their Empire, whoſe circuit contained the chiefeſt part of the whole world, as hereafter, though briefly, I le declare in order.

Philip King of *Macedon*, he whom I formerly ſpoke of, taking it very hainouſly that the *Romans* had put him to ſuch a ſtraight: was aminded to renew the warre, but being prevented by death, his ſonne and ſucceſſor *Perſeus*, having beene long before that incenſed againſt the *Romanes*, undertooke this warre as it were

a part

a part of his inheritage: but *Lucius Æmilius Paulus*, the ſecond time Conſull, at length overthrew him in battle, took him, together with his wife, mother, and Children, and led them in triumph; for this cauſe ſurnamed *Macedonicus*: and from that time *Macedonia* became one of the Provinces of the *Romanes*. The yeare next before this, died *Ennius*, aged 70. yeares, as *Cicero* hath it. Within a few yeares following, *Publius Cornelius Naſica* ſubdued *Dalmatia*, and not long after the third Punicke or *Carthaginian* warre begunne. For the *Carthaginians* being impatient of peace and eaſe, offer violence and hoſtility to the reſt of their neighbours, but more eſpecially to *Maſſiniſſa*, King of *Numidia*, a confederate and friend to the *Romanes*. The *Romanes* being requeſted

Perſeus K. of *Macedonia*, with his wife, mother & children, led in triumph at *Rome* by *Æmilius Paulus*, 3802.

The third *Punick* or *Carthaginian* warre, 3819.

for their aid, decreed to make warre in the 604. yeare of *Rome* built: but herein they differed in their opinions, whether it were better to raze the Citie, or preserve it safe: some were of opinion, that it should not bee destroyed; for that said they, *Carthage* being taken away, they should fall into civill warres, and dissentions amongst themselves: but *Marcus Portius Cato*, urging the contrary, shewed what danger might hang over the commonwealth of *Rome*, by reason of that Citie, unless it were quite destroyed; and this his opinion carried it, hee himselfe departing his life in the time of this deliberation, having attained to the eighty fift yeare of his age.

Cicero rankes him amongst the ancient Orators, and places him next after *Marcus Cornelius Cethegus*, whom *Ennius*

(as hee reports) extolled. Hee alſo further relates, that there were a hundred and fiftie of *Catoes* Orations extant, ſtuft with excellent words and matter: and reprehends thoſe of his time for their too much niceneſſe, in not diligently peruſing them. He compares him with *Lyſias* the *Athenian* Writer.

In this third *Punicke* warre, *Publius Scipio Emilianus*, *Publius Macedonicus* his ſon, and *Publius Scipio Aphricanus* his nephew by adoption, was at length made Captaine Generall. Hee in the fourth yeare of this warre, begun by others, after a ſharpe ſiege continuing for certaine dayes, tooke the Citie of *Carthage*, ſack't it, burnt it, and laid it levell with the ground, thereupon gaining his ſirname, likewiſe ſtiled *Aphricanus*, as he was, that overthrew *Hannibal*, as

Carthage deſtroyed, 3822.

as aforesaid. And this was the period of the most puissant Citie, which by originall was more ancient then *Rome*; and for worthinesse of Captaines, scarce inferiour to it, having borne rule farre and wide. *Cicero* writes, that *Publius Scipio* after hee had taken *Carthage*, restored to the *Sicilians*, those Enfignes and ornaments which the *Carthaginians* had taken from them some yeares before: as also to the *Agrigentines*, that famous brazen Bull, which is reported to bee *Phalaris* the Tyrants, wherein hee was wont for punishment, to inclose men alive, and then to set it on fire. This *Phalaris* lost not his life by treachery, as many other Tyrants did, but the whole multitude of the *Agrigentines* fell upon him. *Cicero* cals *Africa* the tower of all Provinces. Much about this time, the *Romans* made warre

warwith the *Achaians* a certain people of *Greece* for offring injury to the Ambaſſadours.

Lucius Mummius Conſull, was Captaine Generall in this warre, who getting the upper hand in battell, forced all *Achaia* to be yielded up to him, and by decree of the Senate, ſet fire on *Corinth* the chiefe City, and utterly ſubverted it: leſt at any time hereafter, being repaired, it might ariſe and lift up head againe. *Mummius* hereupon was Sirnamed *Achaicus*. About this time alſo one *Viriathus*, (who from a Shepherd grew to be a Hunter, from a Hunter, to a High-way-thiefe, and afterward, Leader of a ſtrong Army) kept the Country of [a] *Luſitania* in poſſeſſion, who for ſome certaine yeares holding play with the *Romanes*, and very oft putting them to the foyle, was at length trecherouſly ſlaine: and

[a] Now *Portugal* in *Spaine*.

soone after, *Decius Iunius Brutus* subdued all *Lusitania*, even to the *Ocean*. In the meane time the *Romanes* received a great overthrow from the *Numantines* a people of *Spaine*: for refusing to accept of the peace made by *Mummius* the Consull, in regard it was dishonourable, of a new create *Publius Scipio Æmilianus Africanus*, Consull, contrary to the ordinary course, and to him commit the charge of the warre: who marching forth with an Army, having recalled the souldiers, growne more effeminate and impatient of labour, to observance of strict Military discipline, after hee had besieged the City of *Nymantia* some certaine dayes, tooke and subverted it in the fourteenth yeare after the subversion of *Carthage*, and of *Rome* built, sixe hundred and twenty. *Cicero* cals *Carthage* and *Numantia*, a-

Numantia destroyed 3832.

tia, the two terrours of the *Roman* Empire.

At this time there aroſe an uproare of the bond-ſlaves in *Sicilie*: who having gathered together great forces, were at length with much a doe repreſſed by *Caius Fulvius* the Conſull. After this the *Romanes* had war with *Ariſtonicus* in *Aſia*: for *Attalus* King of *Pergamos*, had by his teſtament made the *Romanes* his heires, but *Ariſtonicus* being allied to him, ſeized upon that part of *Aſia*, and defrauded the *Romanes* of the benefit of his Teſtament. Him, *Marcus Peperna*, Conſull, vanquiſhed and at length tooke priſoner. The yeare following, which was the 625 yeare of *Rome* built, *Scipio Aphricanus* lying at his owne houſe, was in the night time murthered by his owne kinſfolkes, as it was ſuppoſed. *Cicero* makes relation of

Scipio Aphricanus murthered 3837.

of his moſt fluent eloquence, his fidelity and integrity: and writes, that albeit the whole City, was plunged in depth of ſorrow for his death, yet no man opened his mouth about the cauſe therof. He reports alſo, that in this yeare, the ſinne was twice doubled. Thus this moſt renowned Commander ended his daies, aged 56 yeares, which, as *Cicero* in a moſt ſweet fictitious invention faignes, *Aphricanus* the elder had forewarned him of. In this age lived *Lucilius, Terence, Pacuvius, Accius, Licinius, Cæcilius. Afranius Caius Lalius*, one moſt intimate with *Aphricanus*, calls this *Pacuvius* his friend, but *Terence* his familiar conſort. After this, *Fabius Maximus* Conſull, in a maine battle, overthrew the [n] *Allobroges*, [o] *Arverni*, and [p] *Ruteni*, people of *Gallia*. At the ſame time, *Caius Grachus*, Tribune

n Of *Savoy*.
o About the River *Roine*.
p About *Rhodes*.

bune of the Souldiers, an eloquent man, and defender of the *Agrarian* Law, was shine at *Rome*, his brother *Tiberius Gracchus* having twelve yeares before lost his life for the like cause. *Cicero* gives both of them commendations for their eloquence; and writes, that *Tiberius* his Orations were not very beautifull set forth in words, but were acure and full of wisedome: and *Caius* his brothers, were fittest to be perused by those of the younger sort, as serving not onely to whet on, but also to nourish the wit, and hee stiles him the most witty and most eloquent of all the *Romanes*.

Gracchus dream't that hee heard his brother *Tiberius* telling him that hee should dye of the same death wherof he did, and as *Cicero* reports, he told it to many before hee was created Tribune of the commons.

Their

The warre with *Iugurtha* King of *Numidia* begun *Anno Mundi*. 3857.

Their Lawes are extant, about proviſion of corne, replantation of Colonies, ſouldiers rewards for their ſervice, governement of the Province, the peoples ſuffrages about election of Magiſtrates, and of letting to farme King *Attalus* his Lands, and the countrey of *Aſia*. After their Tribunitian diſſentions followed that war, which the *Romanes* had with *Iugurtha* King of *Numidia*. It was begunne by *Lucius Calphurnius Beſtia*, Conſull; continued by *Quintus Cæcilius Metellus*, and ended by *Caius Marius* the Conſull, who ſerved in the warres with *Publius Scipio*: for *Bacchus* King of *Mauritania*, *Iugurtha's* confederate, not willing any longer to undergoe the hazzard of warre, delivered up *Iugurtha* bound, into *Sylla's* hands, who was ſent over to him for that purpoſe by *Marius*. And at this

Ended, 3859.

this very time, which was in the ſixe hundred forty ſeventh yeare of *Rome* built, was *Marcus Tullius Cicero* borne, being eight yeares after the birth of that moſt famous Oratour, *Quintus Hortenſius*. In the time of this *Ingurthine* warre, the q *Cimbrians* and r *Tutons*, pierce ſome into *Italy*, ſome into *Gallia*; where having very much annoyed the *Romanes*, and in certaine battels, ſometimes overcomming the Procenſuls, ſometimes their Lievtenants were at length overthrowne, and put to the ſword by *Caius Marius*, the fourth time Conſull: the *Tentons* at s *Aquenſis*, and the *Cimbrians* on the marches of t *Inſubria*.

Cicero born 38.

q *Danes.*

r *Germanes* vanquiſhed by *Caius Marius* 3867.

s *Aix.*

t *Lombard.*

To this felicitie ſucceeded a new tumult: for certaine people of *Italy*, as the *Samnites*, *Pelignians*, *Marſians*, *Veſtinians*, *Maruſinians*, *Vmbrians* *Pi-*

The *Sociall* war 3877.

Picentines, Lucanians, revolted from the *Romanes*. At divers battels, at length they were reduced to ſubjection. In the necke of this, followes another miſchiefe, and a dangerous on to the Commonwealth: for *Mithridates*, King of *Pontus*, expelled *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Nichomedes* King of *Bythinia*, (both friends and confederates with the *Romanes*) out of their dominions; and ſeizing upon *Phrygia* a Province of the *Romanes* broke into *Aſia*.

The warre with *Mithridates* 3880.

Hereupon the Senate decreed to remedy it by the ſword: but juſt in the nicke, ſprung up a faction, ſome requiring *Lucius Sylla* a man of Noble parentage, others *Caius Marius* for their Generall. *Publius Sulpitius* Tribune of the Commons, ayded *Marius* his party, but *Sylla* having command over the Army, expelled *Marius*

rius the City; who thus exiled and lurking in the marishes about *Minturna*, not without very imminent danger of his life, in a little Barke, strucke over into *Africa*. In *Sylla's* absence, in the warres of *Asia*, *Lucius Cornelius Cinna*, Consull, begun to raise an uproare and practice new seditions: who, after he was banished by his collegue *Cneius Octavius*, and expelled the City, makes fresh head againe, and joynes with *Caius Marius*, who upon that occasion was returned from *Africa*.

Cinna and *Marius* besiege and take *Rome* 3882.

Thus having contracted their forces they joyntly besiege the City of *Rome*, on that side where the village of *Janiculum* stood: when many of the City, shewing themselves not so much cowards, as perfidious wretches (no meanes for resistance being left) giving them entrance, they

they made all places flow with blood and destruction, and forthwith proclaiming themselves Consuls, in that their office, exercise much cruelty: among the rest *Lucius Cinna* committed that famous orator *Marcus Antonius* to the sword, and *Caius Marius* did the like for *Quintus Catulus*. *Lucius Sylla* hearing of those hurly-burlies, having in a manner recovered all that hee warred for, concluding a peace with *Mithridates*, returnes into *Italy*, but *Marius*, seventh time Consull, dyed before his arrivall. *Lucius Cinna* had for his Collegue *Cneius Papirius Carbo* on their party; who although they opposed *Sylla* with might and maine, were, together with *Marius* his son put to flight: and *Sylla* being now sole Commander, pursued his adversaries very sharpely, hung out a writ

writ of proſcription, ſels the proſcripts goods, and diſ-inabled their children of all privilege and right of bearing honours in the Commonwealth: and then making himſelfe Dictator, carried all matters according to his owne will, and infringed the Tribunes authority: and when he ſold the Cittizens goods, declared in the publicke aſſemblies, that hee ſould nothing but his owne prey. Briefly, it came to that paſſe, that no man without his conſent, could hold either goods, country, or life: and with ſuch bitter hatred was he incenſt againſt *Cains Marius*, that hee cauſed the Reliques of his body to be ſcattered and ſtrewed up and downe the River [u] *Anio*; and hee himſelfe was the firſt of any Nobleman of the houſe of the *Cornelioes* that deſired to be burnt by fire: it may be fearing

u *Teveron.*

ring left the ſame accident ſhould befall his own dead body. *Cicero* relates that *Marius* was ſtrong and valiant, and conſtant in his wrath: but hee taxes *Sylla* of vehemencie, and *Lucius Cinna* of cruelty. Hee further ſtiles *Marius* the terror of his enemies, and the hope and helpe of his Country. *Lucius Sylla* made foure new Lawes, againſt Forgery, Parricide, Murther and Injuries. In the time of his Dictatorſhip, *Marcus Cicero* aged 26 yeares, came into the Court, and pleaded *Sextus Roſcius* his cauſe in publicke. Before him, theſe Oratours were moſt famous, *Quintus Catulus, Caius Iulius, Marcus Antonius, Lucius Craſſus* In which age, ſaith *Cicero*, the Latine tongue was growne to full perfection in a manner. This age indeed, wherein *Cicero* lived, did moſt of all excell in learning. For

to

to let paſſe ſo many and ſo worthy Orators; there were famous Lawyers, and amongſt the reſt, *Caius Aquilius, Gallus Lucius, Lucilius Balbus, Caius Inventius, Sextus Papirius*, who were *Quintus Mutius Scævola*, the * *Pontifies* Auditors, to whom *Cicero* alſo in his youth was a retainer. *Publius Servius Sulpitius* was well neere *Ciceroes* equall, hee was Auditor of the above named men: and *Aulus Oſſilius, Publius Alphenus Varus Caius, Titus Decius* the two *Anſidioes*, *Caius Ateius*, *Pacuvius Flavius, Priſcus, Cinna*, and *Publius Cæcilius* were his ſchollers. At the ſame time, with *Sulpitius*, flouriſht *Caius Trebatius*, whoſe ſcholler *Antiſtius Labeo* was. *Cicero* extolling the deceaſed *Sulpitius* in moſt ample words, ſaith, That if all who ever in any age profeſſed the law in this Citie, were gathered

* Chiefe Prieſt about the Sacrifices.

thered together into one place, they were not to bee compared with *Servius Sulpitius*; for he was experienced in point of equity, as well as in strict lawes.

Amongst those who were proscribed, *Quintus Sertorius* was one, a man renowned, both for his couragious valour and experience in military affaires. Hee begun a most fierce warre in the further parts of *Spaine*, where overthrowing certaine *Roman* Generals, brought many Cities into subjection.

Sertorius his warre, 3870.

Hereupon the guidance of this warre, was at length committed to *Cneius Pompeius*: when after many battles, with diversity of fortune on both sides, at length *Sertorius* was treacherously slaine, and afterwards *Pompey*, being almost the tenth yeare after the beginning of the warre, recovered *Spaine*. About this time

Ni-

Nichodemes King of *Bythinia*, departing this life, made the *Romanes* his heires: But *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, who formerly in that faction, betwixt *Marius* and *Sylla* had ſtrucke a league with *Sertorius*, ſeizing upon *Bythinia*, with maine forces renewes the war: Againſt him *Lucius Lucullus* was ſent with an Army, who when hee was Conſull, had good ſucceſſe in his battles of Horſemen; and afterwards being Proconſull, defeating his forces, and recovering *Bythinia*, cauſed him to retire into *Pontus*: and there too, *Mithridates* receiving an ouerthrow in a maine battle, fled to *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*: yet *Lucullus* ſtill following and purſuing him, in ſome few battailes defeated both their forces: but the mutinous diſſentions amongſt the Souldiers, by ſome craftily raiſed, hindered

him from fully finiſhing the warre, and bringing home the wiſht ſucceſſe and honour of his victory. For within a while after *Lucullus* being called home, *Cneius Pompey* was made Captaine Generall in that warre: to which ſervice *Marcus Cicero* alſo was a motioner, having made a very elegant Oration to the people in *Pompeyes* commendation. *Lucullus* thus recalled, held his triumph nevertheleſſe, and beſtowed a very ſumptuous banquet upon the *Romanes*: ſoone after this, leaving his Offices in the Common-wealth, hee lived at home privately, ſtudiing Philoſophy, and erected a moſt copiouſly furniſht Library. In his ordinary table, he was (as at all times elſe) very ſumptuous and magnificent. *Cicero* makes mention of this Library, and ſayes that hee was wont to come thither to cull forth

forth bookes: *Pompey* put *Mithridates* to flight, and purſued him very farre. He cauſed King *Tigranes* to yield himſelfe over into his hands, and ſeeing him abaſed and forlorne in his Campe, advanced him, as *Cicero* writes, and placing the * Diadem upon his head againe, which he had taken from him, under certaine cautions, commanded him to raigne againe. At length *Mithridates* being beſieged by his owne ſonne *Pharnaces*, ſlew himſelfe. That warre which *Pompey* made againſt the *Pyrates* (which was before hee went againſt *Mithridates*) wonne him much authority.

* *Inſigne regium.*

This warre thus appeaſed, preſently another civill broyle is broached: for *Lucius Catiline* with many more, conſpired the ruine of the Commonwealth, but by *Ciceroes* ſingular induſtry (who was then

Conſull) his villany was diſcovered, he expelled the Citie, and having gathered together certaine bands and troopes of abject fellowes in *Hetruria*, was in battaile by *Caius Antonius* Conſull, *Ciceroes* collegue, overthrowne and ſlaine. *Cicero* every where amongſt his workes, ſpeakes much of the ſervice which hee then performed for the Common-wealth, and makes relation not onely of the fire-brands then ſeene in the night time, the flaming of the Elements, Lightnings and Earthquakes: but alſo applyes thoſe wondrous prodigies, which hapned when *Lucius Cotta* and *Tarquatus* were Conſuls, (being two yeares before his Conſulſhip) to this time: when many Turrets in the Capitoll were ſtrucke downe, the Images of the gods overthrowne, the ſtatues of the ancient *Heroes* beate downe

downe, the brazen Tables of the Law melted; as alſo the ſtatue of *Romes* builder, *Romulus* in forme of an Infant, gaping and ſucking at the teats of a Wolfe, was ſmitten. *Cicero* deſcribes *Catilines* nature and qualities; ſayes, that there never was ſuch another Monſter as hee upon the face of the Earth, compoſed of ſuch contrary, different, and inutually antipathizing appetites and diſpoſitions of nature.

Caius Octavius borne 3906.

In the time of *Ciceroes* Conſulſhip was *Caius Octavius* borne, and *Iudea* made Tributary to the *Romanes*, after *Cneius Pompey* had ſurprized the Citie of *Ieruſalem*. The fift yeare following, *Lucius Piſo*, and *Aulus Gabinius* Conſuls, the [x] *Helvetians* changed their habitation, and levying maine forces intended to paſſe thorow the Province of *Gallia*, into the further parts thereof,

x Now called *Switzers*.

and there to ſeate themſelves, in regard of the fertility of the ſoyle. But *Caius Iulius Cæſar*, who was ſixe yeares younger then *Cicero*, having notice hereof, preparing an Army, (the Senate having authorized him over that Province) marcht thither, and in pitcht battle vanquiſhed the Enemy, and afterwards going out againſt *Arioviſtus* King of the *Germanes*, who had annoyed the Countrey of *Gallia*, y *Celtica*, but more eſpecially the z *Hæduies*, confederates with the *Romanes*, overthrew him at *Beſanſon*, a Towne of the a *Sequans*, not farre from the *Ryne*. Soone after hee brought the whole Countrey of *Gallia* in ſubjection to the *Romanes*, and forthwith ſtriking over the ſea into *Britanie*, conquered it.

Cicero reports, that *Cæſar* writ to him out of *Britaine* on the

y That part of *France*, betwixt the River of Seine and *Garonne*

z Now *Wallons*.

a *Burgundians* inhabiting about the river Saine.

the firſt day of *September*, and the Letters came to his hands the eight and twentieth day of the ſame moneth. When *Cæſar* went into *Gallia*, *Cicero* being moleſted by *Publius Clodius*, Tribune of the Commons, departed into exile: firſt making an Oration to the Gentry and Commons, wherein he commended his children and family to their care: and within a few moneths after, being called backe by the Senate (with exceeding great congratulation of the people) made another Oration to the *Romanes*, wherein he rendred thankes to his friends. Afterwards hee layed the blame on *Lucius Piſo* and *Aulus Gabinius* Conſuls, for his baniſhment, and ſhewed that by them hee was betrayed, declayming certaine Orations againſt each of them, in one whereof, hee counſelled the Senate to take

from them the Provinces of *Syria* and *Macedonia*, and not to call backe *Caius Cæsar*, having moſt happy ſucceſſe in his warres in *Gallia*, but to continue his authority: whereby he might fully finiſh the war. Meane while *Ptolemy Auletes*, King of *Egypt* (for his ſloathfulneſſe and cruelty thruſt out of his Kingdome) came to *Rome*, and the Senate at *Cnejus Pompeyes* entreaty, reſtor'd him by *Aulus Gabinius*, expelling *Archelaus*, whom the people had ordained to be their King.

At length *Gabinius* was adjudged to pay into the common treaſury 10000. Talents, or as ſome of our times ſuppoſe 6000000. becauſe he had received ſo much from *Ptolemy*. And *Marcus Craſſus* (who had in charge the managing of the *Parthian* warre) having paſt over the River of *Euphrates*, was overthrowne, and ſoone

Every Talent amounteth to 175. pound ſterling.

ſoone after ſlaine an enter-view upon Truce. This was hee who was wont to ſay, that no man was rich, except hee could maintaine an [a] Army at his owne charge. About this time was *Publius Clodius* ſlain by *Titus Anaio Milo*; *Cicero* defended *Milo* (*Cneius Pompey* being then the third time, and alone Conſull) yet at length hee was commanded to go into exile.

[a] An Army conſiſted o 2400 foot, and 2000 horſe.

The warres with the *Galles* being ended, which was about the eight yeare thereof, that civill warre of *Caius Cæſars*, with his ſonne in law *Pompey*, burſt forth. The occaſion whereof was, becauſe *Cæſar* was to be depriv'd of his Conſulſhip, except hee would firſt diſmiſſe his forces, and ſurrender his Province, but hee was adviſed that it could no wayes ſtand with his ſafety, to part from his Army: yet hee con-

The civill warre betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, begun 3916.

deſcen-

descended upon condition; that *Pompey* as well as hee, should yeeld up his forces: but when that was refused, marching out with his forces with incredible celerity, hee left *Gallia*, and came into *Italy*, where entring into the Countrey of [b]*Flaminia*, hee tooke many townes, some by force, others by dedition: Vpon notice hereof, *Pompey* and the two Consuls, *Caius Marcellus*, and *Lucius Lentulus* fly from *Rome* to *Brundusium*, a sea coast Towne in [c] *Apulia*: thither marcht *Cesar*, but before his arrivall, the Consuls had stucke over the Seas to [d] *Durachium*; and not long after *Pompey* followes them. Now *Cesar* being prevented by time, not having a Navie in readinesse, could not pursue them, but returnes to *Rome*, where calling together the Senate, hee makes complaint of his injuries, and also

[b] Now *Romandiola*.

[c] *Puell.*

[d] *Durace* in *Macedonia*.

alſo propounded certaine conditions of peace: but being ſleighted of by the Senate, hee marches to e *Maſſilia*, where the gates were ſhut againſt him: hereupon rigging his Navie, hee beſieges it both by ſea and land, and there leaving his Deputies, ſets forward into *Spaine*, where at length hee compels *Petreius* and *Africanus*, two of *Pompeyes* Captains, together with the whole Army, to yield. Then he returnes to *Maſſilia*, which City deſpairing of all ayde, preſently yields to his power: and after hee was made Dictator in his abſence, by *Marcus Lepidus* the Prætor, repaires to *Rome*, calls an aſſembly, and is created Conſull, together with *Publius Servilius Iſauricus*: Soone after having ſetled the affaires of the City, hee ſtrikes over into *Greece*, and at length overthrew *Pompey* in *Theſſaly* in

e *Marſiles* in *Fraace.*

Pompey overthrowne 3921.

in a maine battell, and disbanded him, though his Army farre exceeded *Cæsars*. *Pompey* thus put to flight arrives in *Ægypt*, *Ptolomy*, *Dionysius Ptolomy Auletes* Son, being then King thereof: which *Auletes*, (when hee was expelled his Kingdome) *Pompey* had restored by *Aulus Gabinius*, as aforesaid. In regard of which benefit, hee expected ayde and protection from that Countrey: but the King being a child, his Nobles (either despising *Pompeyes* fortune, or else fearing some troubles) treacherously kils him. *Cæsar* pursuing *Pompey*, arrives at *Alexandria* with 3200 men, and there first of all had notice of *Pompeyes* death. *Cicero* passing his censure upon both of them. If in the last war, saith hee, *Pompey* had abated somewhat from his austere gravity, and *Cæsar* much from his ambition,

And slaine.

bition, we ſhould have had both a firme peace, and ſome Common-wealth left us.

The King of *Ægypt* was then in warres with his ſiſter *Cleopatra*. Hereupon *Cæſar* being at *Alexandria*, would have their controverſies rather decided by courſe of Law before himſelfe, than by civill warres amongſt themſelves: becauſe hee was Conſull of *Rome*, and ſome yeares before, there was confederacie agreed upon with *Ptolomy* the Kings Father by decree and conſent of the Senate. But the States tooke this moſt hainouſly, complaining that their Kings Royall Majeſty was ecclipſed, in calling him to ſit in judgement upon their controverſies. Thus incenſed in mind they prepare to make warre againſt *Cæſar*, but hee after much danger getting the upper hand, did not reduce it into the forme

forme of a Province: but tollerated *Cleopatra*, and her yonger brother (the King being slaine) to hold the kingdome. From thence marching into *Syria*, and afterwards into *Pontus*, hee put to flight King *Pharnaces*, *Mithridates* his Sonne, and setled peace in *Cappadocia*, *Armenia*, *Gallo-Greece*, *Pontus* and *Bythinia*. Forthwith returning into *Italy*, and so to *Rome* about the middle of Winter, at the Winter, * Sunsted, hee strikes over from [f] *Lilybeum*, into *Africa*, though warned by a chiefe Soothsiyer, not to take his voyage before the end of Winter. *Scipio* and *Cato*, *Marcus Pontius*, *Catos* Nephewes sonnes were fled thither from the battell at [g] *Pharsalia*, and having gathered together a great Army, drew King [h] *Iuba* into confederacie with them. *Cæsar* marching thither, overthrew

* *Solstitium.*

[f] A towne and promontory in *Sicily*.

[g] Where *Pompey* was overthrown

[h] King of *Mauritania*

threw and deſtroyed them all; but *Cato*, (leſt hee ſhould fall into his hand) killed himſelfe at [i] *Vtica*: which fact *Cicero* defends, and ſaith, that it was better for him (whom nature had indued with incredible gravity) ſo to doe, than to behold the face of a Tyrant. This *Cato* was of the ſect of the *Stoickes*, and would oftentimes maintaine ſtrange opinions in the Senate, as though he were verſed in *Platoes* politickes, as *Cicero* ſaith, and not in the reffuſe off-ſpring of *Romulus*. Afterward *Caeſar* repaires to *Rome*, and having triumphed over *Gallia*, *Egypt*, *Pontus* and *Africa*, ſets forward to *Spaine*, where he warred againſt, and ſubdued *Sextus Pompeius*. Thus having vanquiſhed all his adverſaries, and ſetled a peace in many Nations farre and wide: in the fift yeare after the beginning of

i Now called *Biſerta* in *Barbary*.

The fourth Monarchy begun by *Caius Cæsar* an. 3925 being 300. yeares and odde after *Alexander* the Great.

of his civill wars, hee returnes to *Rome*, where after hee had triumphed over *Hiſpaine*, hee aſſumed the offered title and authority of perpetuall Dictator, and ſwayed the Senate according to his owne will; hee, in a manner having the ſole beſtowing of all honours, and publicke offices, conferring them upon whom hee pleaſed thereby incurring many mens ill will.

And now the State of the Common-wealth being altered, and the ſupreme government thereof reduced to one mans principality, thoſe conſpiracies then in brewing againſt him, were at length, broached: For, in the fift moneth after his returne to *Rome*, hee was ſlaine in *Pompeyes* * Court-houſe, on the Ides of *March*, and by thoſe very men, whom by his late ſhewed kindneſſe, hee had obliged to him

Caius Cæſar ſlaine.

* *Curia.*

him, as alſo pardoned them for ſerving againſt him in the *Pompeian* warre. Thoſe were *Marcus* and *Decius Brutus*, *Caius Caſsius*, *Cneius Domitius*, *Caius Trebonius*, *Quintus Tullius Cimber*, two of the *Serviloes*, *Caſca*, *Hala*, and many more, *Marcus Antonius* the Conſull, *Cæſars* Collegue, indicted *Cicero* alſo before the Senate, as guilty of the murther: for that *Marcus Brutus* preſently after *Caſar* was ſlaine (holding up his dagger on high) ſhouted aloud, and nominated him, congratulating him for recoverie of their libertie.

Many report that *Caius Cæſar* ſpake to *Marcus Brutus* in Greeke, as hee ruſhed upon him, and called him Sonne, how they take it, I know not; but it is evident out of *Cicero*, that *Brutus* was fifteene yeares younger than hee.

Caius

Caius Cæsar made divers lawes, ſome whereof when he was Conſull, and other ſome when hee was Dictator, which after his name were called the *Iulian Lawes*: as, about diſtribution of lands, concerning Violence, Majeſty, Extortion, Prieſt-ſhips, Vſury. Other Lawes there were, which goe under his name, but were made by *Octavius*. All commend him for his clemencie, and *Cicero* gives him praiſe for his wit, quickneſſe, reaſon, memory, learning, providence, diligence: but hee ſtormed grievouſly at his authority, yet ſecretly and in an Epiſtle to *Atticus*, Thou ſhalt perceive, ſaith hee, that this kingdome can ſcarce hold halfe a yeare together. But in all thoſe proceedings, *Cicero* carryed himſelfe very wavering and inconſtntly, for during the warre, hee followed *Pompeyes* party,

party, and his campe, although he reprehended his diſcouragement of mind and cowardize, and in his Epiſtles to his friends, hee cals *Cæſar* a warwaging Tyrant and Monſter. But after *Pompey* was put to flight, and ſlaine, and *Cæſar* had pardoned many of his adverſaries, he changes his ſtile, and in three ſet orations extolled him with praiſes to the very heavens. Further, when *Cæſar* heard that there was treaſon plotted againſt him, and would often ſay, that he had lived long enough; hee beſeeches and requeſts him to reject that opinion: for although hee was full fraught with glory, and in that regard, for himſelfe, had lived long enough, yet he had not lived long enough for the Common-wealth, which could not be without his ayde and protection: as concerning any danger, hee need not trouble himſelfe.

ſelfe. For all of us, ſaith he, doe not onely promiſe to watch about and guard thee, but alſo to interpoſe our owne ſides and bodies. But for all this, after *Cæſars* death he rejoyced wonderfully, and boaſted, that they who had ſlaine him, had obtained that glory, which could ſcarce be contained within the heavens.

This therefore is the fourth and laſt Monarchie; in which place we muſt note, how this city which was built by Shepherds: from moſt ſlender beginnings, by little and little increaſed to the height of Potencie, and grew to be Empreſſe of the whole world.

Now hereafter I will briefly, as farre as I may, declare after what manner it fell off by degrees from this moſt high eſtate, unto ruine.

The end of the firſt Booke.

IOHN SLEIDAN of the foure chiefe Monarchies.

OR,

The Key of History.

The second Booke.

CAesar being slain, his sisters son *Caius Octavius* (having drawn about the military bands to his party) persecuted the murtherers most bitterly. And at first, seemed to take armes in defence of the Com-

Octavius Cæsar begun his raigne, *An. mundi* 3925. & raigned an. 57.

Common-wealth againſt *Marcus Antonius*: but afterward dividing the Empire with him, and *Marcus Lepidus* ordained a Triumvirat, in which *Marcus Cicero* was by *Marcus Antonius* (whom hee had very vehemently oppoſed) put to death, being ſixty three yeares of age, which was eight yeares after *Quintus Hortenſius* his death, who was ſo many yeares elder than hee, as aboveſaid *Cicero* directly overſhot himſelfe in his owne policies: for when *Marcus Antonius* moleſted the Common-wealth, after *Caius Cæſars* death, he with exceeding great praiſes commended to the Senate, *Caius Octavius*, *Cæſars* kinſman, a young Gentleman of twenty yeares of age, and begunne to urge to have him created Conſull, without any regard had to his age, producing examples of ancient times, how it

Governement by three.

Cicero put to death, an. 3926,

it might be done, and refuting ſuch objections as might ſeeme dangerous; profeſſing to bee bound to the Senate upon his honour, that hee ſhould alwayes continue ſuch a Common-wealths man, as hee then was, and ſuch an one, as they ought chiefly, to wiſh and deſire him to be: but afterwards, forſaken by them, hee fell into *Marcus Antonius* his hands. *Marcus Brutus* reprehends him ſharpely for ſuch his flattery.

Then as it is common, certaine grudges ariſing in emulation of the Empire, when as *Marcus Lepidus* for conſpiracie againſt *Octavius*, was formerly removed out of the Triumvirat, and baniſhed: *Octavius* made warre againſt *Antonius* his other Collegue: and after his victory at k *Actium*, overthrew both him and *Cleopatra* before mentioned, at

k A towne in *Epirus*

Alexandria, forcing them both to kill themselves, and made *Egypt* a *Roman* Province. Authors report, that in *Ptolemy Auletes* raigne, the yearely revenues of *Egypt*, came to 12500. talents, which summe the learned of our times reckon to 7500000. crownes: but when it came in subjection to the *Romanes*, they judged it to be farre more rich, in regard of the traffique with *Iudea* and *Æthiopia*. *Antonius* thus overthrowne and cut off, *Octavius* alone governed the Common-wealth forty foure yeare, and in the 29. yeare of his Empire, and of the world, 3954. as most account, was our Saviour IESVS CHRIST borne. *Herod*, sirnamed the Great, having seven yeares before, most sumptuously re-edified the demolished Temple of *Ierusalem*.

Christ borne, *An. Mundi*, 3954.

Marcus Antonius was married

ried to *Caius Octavius* his ſiſter, but afterward (being intangled with *Cleopatra's* love) forſooke his wife, and married her, which partly was cauſe of the warre. Both of them were exceeding riotous, and Authors relates almoſt incredible ſtories of their banquets, delights, and pleaſures: but ſuch as I before ſet downe, was the up-ſhot and end of their lives: This *Marcus Antonius*, was the moſt famous Oratour before mentioned, *Marcus Antonius* his Nephew.

In *Cajus Octavius* his raigne, the *Romanes* had their firſt war in *Germany*, within their owne territories. *Caius Iulius Cæſar* indeed overthrew the *Germanes* twice, but it was in *Gallia*, to wit, *Arioviſtus* in the Countrey of the *Celts*, and afterwards at the meeting together of the River *Maze*, and the *Rhyne*. After this victory,

he built a bridge, and paſt over the *Rhyne*, but reſting there a few dayes, brought backe his Armie into *Gallia*, and broke downe the bridge. Two yeares after, he paſſed againe over the *Rhyne* on his ſecond bridge, a little above that place where hee formerly had led over his Army, and then fully intended to have gone againſt the [1] *Suevians*, but being certified by his Scouts, of all affaires, and fearing much difficulty, and ſcarcitie of proviſion, returnes into *Gallia*, breakes downe ſome part of the bridge, and in the other part, built a Tower and a Caſtle, and fortified it with Cittadels, that he might not altogether free his Enemies from the feare of his returne. And this was all that *Cæſar* did againſt the *Germanes*, as hee himſelfe writes. But *Octavius* by the two brothers, *Tiberius* and *Druſus*, made

[1] Now of *pomerania*. in *Germany*

made warre againſt the [m] *Rhætians*, and [n] *Vindelicians*, and with [o] *Vbian* forces (who were confederates with the *Romans*) *Quintilius Varus* being their Captaine Generall, invaded that part of *Germany*, now called *Weſtphalia*: howbeit *Arminius* Chiefe-taine of the [p] *Cheruſcans*, almoſt utterly overthrew him, betwixt the River [q] *Amaſia*, and [r] *Lupia*. *Horace* in a moſt elegant Ode, comforts *Virgil*, lamenting his death. *Druſus* died in *Germanie*, leaving behind him two ſonnes; *Germanicus* a moſt worthy Souldier, and *Claudius*.

Horace in another moſt elegant Ode, as wee ſaid before, extols him, and derives his pedegree from *Caius Claudius Nero*, who when hee was the ſecond time Conſull, together with *Marcus Livius Salinator*, ſlew *Aſdrubal*, *Annibals* brother, at the River of *Metaurum*,

m *Germanes* bordering on the Alpes.
n *Vandals.*
o People about *Colon.*
p *Germanes* neere the river *Elbe.*
q *Ems.*
r *Neccher.*
Horat lib. 1. Ode, 24.
Horat. li. 4. Ode, 9.

rum, as he was bringing over a ſupply of forces [f] *Auguſtus* alſo ſubdued the [t] *Cantabrians*, [u] *Aquitanians*, [*] *Pannonians*, [x] *Dalmatians*, [y] *Illyrians* [z] *Saſſians*, and inhabitants of the *Alpes*. It is reported, that hee often intended to lay off the weighty charge of the Empire: but againe conſidering with himſelfe that it would be raſhly committed to many mens authority, changes his minde. In the thirty and third yeare of his raigne, deceaſed *Herod* the Great: whom hee, and *Marcus Antonius* in the third yeare of their Triumvirate, had made King of *Iudea*: and in the eight yeare after his death, his ſonne and ſucceſſor *Archelaus*, was baniſhed to *Vienna* a Towne in *Gallia*.

It is written, that *Octavius* maintained forty foure legions of Souldiers in protection of the Provinces of the Empire.

In

[f] *Octavius* ſo ſtiled in honour, as much as Soveraigne, at this day.

[t] Of *Biſcay* in *Spain*

[u] Of *Aquitane* in *Gallia*.

[*] *Hungars*.

[x] Inhabiting *Wendenland*. in ſome parts.

[y] Of *Sclavonia* alſo of *Wendenland*.

[z] Inhabiting neere *Lombardy*.

In *Egypt* there were three, as many in *Hispaine*, and eight in *Germany*. The yearely expence (as many in their computation reckon) amounts to 2100000. crownes, so as they may distribute amongst every Legion, 272000. crownes yearely. A legion as they hold, consists of 6000. foot-men, and 500. horse-men.

Octavius is very much commended for his love and liberality towards men renowned for their Learning. The most famous Poets which then flourished, were *Varius*, *Virgil*, *Plotius*, *Valgius*, *Fuscus*, the two *Viscoes*, *Polio*, *Messala*, the *Bibulies*, *Servius*, *Furnius and Horace*, who desired that his workes might have approbation from them, not regarding other mens censures of them. But the most famous wits of *Rome*, flourished in a certaine continuall order from *Marcus*

Portius Cato, and *Aphricanus* the elder, untill this time. For this age wherein *Augustus* lived, was in a manner the last that retained that genuine sense, and pure vigour of the Latine tongue; for afterwards by little and little, it grew more and more corrupt, till it degenerated into meere Barbarisme, which continued even till within our memory.

The Poets borne at [a] *Corduba*, used as *Tully* saith, a kind of grosse and uncouth garbe: but what thinke wee, would hee have judged of them, who lived after him above a hundred yeares, not onely those who were borne and brought up at *Corduba*, but those of *Rome* also.

[a] Citie of *Betica* in *Spaine*.

Now *Tiberius Augustus* his wives sonne, as also his sonne in law, and by adoption, did (but utterly against his will, at least wise hee pretended so, being

Tiberius, An. Dom. 16. an. 23. m. 6. d. 26.

being with much adoe, at laſt perſwaded to it by the Senates entreaty) tooke upon him the Empire; and at his firſt entrance undertooke nothing of himſelfe alone, but communicated with the Senate, in all matters of importance: notwithſtanding within a little while after, quite neglecting the affaires of the Common-wealth, wholly gave over himſelfe to his pleaſures. In his raigne the *Parthians* bereft him of *Armenia*, and the *Dacians* and *Sarmacians* of *Myſia*, the *Germanes* forraged *Gallia*: but all thoſe loſſes nothing at all mooved him.

Many writers (and thoſe men of great eſteeme in point of Divinity) record that in the fifteenth yeare of his raign, our Saviour IESVS CHRIST was crucified, but Saint *Luke* writes, that in the ſame yeare he was baptized by *Iohn Baptiſt*

Chriſt crucified, *An. ætatis* 33. Luk. cap. 3

At that time flouriſht thoſe Lawyers, *Marcus Cocoius Nerva*, the father and ſonne, and *Caſſius Longinus*, *Tiberius Nero*, who ſerved in the warre at *Alexandria* with *Caius Caſar*, was this *Tiberius* his Father. To him *Caius Caſar Caligula*, ſucceeded, the moſt wicked ſonne and direct Monſter of *Germanicus*, his moſt worthy Father. It is recorded that *Tiberius* in thoſe twenty three yeares which hee raigned, had gathered together an infinite Maſſe of gold: which *Caligula* out of hand in the very firſt yeare conſumed. About the ſecond yeare of his raigne *Herod Antipa*, *Herod* the Great his ſonne, hee who beheaded *Iohn* the Baptiſt, was ſent in baniſhment to [b] *Lugdunum*: to whom *Herod Agrippa* ſucceeded, who beheaded *Iames* the Apoſtle.

Caius Caligula, An. Dom. 38. an. 3. m 8.

b *Lyons in France.*

After *Caligula* was ſlaine, *Claudius*

Claudius his uncle was brought in. Hee bearing that *Britaine* had revolted, went thither, and after hee had subdued part of the Iland, returned home. *Claudius.* 42. an. 13 m. 8. d. 20.

In his raigne hapned that great generall dearth, which *Agabus* foretold, as the Evangelist Saint *Luke* mentions. Acts 11.

Claudius Nero, this *Claudius* his successor, openly signified, that at sometime or other, hee would quite abrogate the order of the Senators. In his raigne *Britanie* gave him a great overthrow, massacring the *Roman* Citizens and confederates there: the Legions also in *Armenia* were compelled to goe reproachfully under the yoke: with much difficulty *Syria* was held in: *Gallia* revolted by the meanes of *Iulius Vindex* Governor of that Province: as afterwards *Spaine*, *Sergius Galba* being their Leader *Nero* 56. An. 13. *Galba* 68. m. 7. d. 7.

Otho m.4. Vitellius. m. 8.

der. And whilſt he was caſting about how to recover thoſe loſſes, and making ready his journey into *Gallia*, the reſt of his forces which lay diſperſed in other Provinces, rebelled. Hiſtories relate what a loathſome and outragious Monſter hee was: and thereupon being condemned by the Senate, as an enemy to the common-wealth, by the helpe of one of his ſervants, hee killed himſelfe. Beſides *Seneca*, theſe Poets then floariſhed, *Lucan*, *Perſius*, and *Silius Italicus*: the laſt whereof was Conſull in the laſt veare of *Neroes* raigne. From that time the State of the common-wealth was brought to that paſſe, that the Creation of the Emperours lay within the power of the Armies and legions of the *Romanes*. After this manner was *Veſpatian* made Emperour. For thoſe bands which lay in *Myſia*, *Pannonia*,

Veſpatian. 63. an. 9. m. 11 324.

adae

Iudaa, and *Syria*, revolted from *Aulus Vitelius*, and ſwore fealtie to *Veſpaſian*. Hee ſubdued *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Byzantium*, *Samos*, *Thracia*, *Cilicia* and *Comagena*, making them *Romane* Provinces, and utterly ſubverted *Ieruſalem*, which war his Son *Titus* mannaged. *Flavius Domitian* made warre againſt the q *Chatties*, *Dacians*, and *Sermatians*, and triumphed over them. Then lived thoſe Poets, *Statius*, *Iuuenal*, and *Martial*. *Vlpius Trajan*, (adopted by *Coccens Nerva*, and afterwards made Emperour (ſubdued the *Dacians*, twice rebelling, bringing them in ſubjection to the *Romanes* and planting Colonies there, marching with an Army againſt *Armenia*, and the *Parthians*, upon dedition and favour brought them into his partie, thereupon gaining his ſurname, of *Parthicus*, but al-

Titus 79. *an.2. m.2. d.20.*
Domitian 81. *an.15.*
Nerva 96. *an* 19 *m.* 1.
Traian, 97. *an.16.m.6. d.15.*
q Now of the Lantzgrave of *Heſſens* Country.

most all those Countreyes by him subdued, at length rebelled, especially the *Armenians* and *Mesopotamians*, and the *Parthians* rejected the King whom hee had assigned them, as soone as his backe was turned homewards towards *Italy*, *Ælius Adrianus* subdued *Iudea* then rebelling: the occasion of this warre, was because he had erected a Temple at *Ierusalem* (which City he suffered to be inhabited againe) to *Iupiter Olympius*: which fact the *Iewes* tooke most hainously. Hee likewise visited the *Gallia's*, *Germany*, *Britaine*, and the *Hispaines*, as afterwards *Mauritania*, the *Parthians*, *Asia* and *Greece*; and returning home through *Sicily*, from thence went again into *Africa*, and after his returne to *Rome*, sets forward againe into *Greece*, and from thence passed into *Arabia*, and afterwards to *Egypt*. Assem-

Adrianus. 116. an 19. m. 6. d. 15.

Aſſembling the Senate, hee commended to them *Antonius Pius*, who being made Emperor after him, maintain'd peace, indeavouring to obtaine all mens good will, and by his letters and courteous demeanure, kept forraigne Kings and people within their obedience. In his time flouriſht thoſe Lawyers, *Alburnius*, *Valens*, *Tuſcianus*, *Vindius*, *Verus*, *Vlpius*, *Marcellus*, *Arrianus*, *Tertullianus*, *Salvius*, *Iulianus*, *Lucius Voluſius*, *Metianus*

Antonius pius. 151. *an.* 22. *m.* 7. *d.* 26.

To *Antonius Pius*, his Son *Marcus Antonius*, ſurnamed the Philoſopher, ſucceeded: He tooke his [c] kinſman *Lucius Aurelius Verus* to be his Aſſociate in the Empire. By him hee had happy ſucceſſe in his warres in *Parthia*, hee himſelfe looking to the affaires of the Common-wealth at home, and in the City: but ſoone after *Verus* dying, he raigned alone and

Antonius the Philoſopher. 16. *an.* 16 *m.* 6. *d.* 1.

c *Corion* cals him his brother.

and overcame in his warre against the *Germanes*, overthrowing also the [f] *Marcomannes*, *Sarmatians*, *Vandals* and [g] *Quadies*, who had invaded the [h] *Pannonia's*. For at this time almost all the nations from *Illyricum* to *Gallia*, had conspired against the name of the *Romanes*.

Commodus Antonins the most lewd sonne of this most laudible Prince, by his Lievtenants overthrew the [i] *Moores* and *Dacians*, quieted the *Pannonians*, *Germanie*, *Britaine*, which Countries cast off their subjection: He himselfe in the meane while wallowing in all manner of filthinesse and crueltie.

Septimius Severus had civill warres with *Niger* and *Albinus* who procured *Asia* and *Gallia* to make a revolt: he had good successe in his warres against the *Parthians*, vanquished the

Iewe

f Now *Moravians* Inhabitants in and about *Silesia*.

g Vpper and lower *Hungary*. *Commodus Antonius* 79 an. 12 m. 8. d. 5.

i Of *Mauritania* or *Morisco* in *Barbary*. *Pertinax*. m. 3 *Didius Iulianus* m. 7.

Septimius Severus 162 21 17. m. 8. 15.

Iewes throughout *Syria*, subdued *Abagatus* King of the *Persians*, and compelled the *Arabians* to come to composition. Hee fortified *Britaine*, with a wall crosse overthwart the Iland, reaching to the Ocean on both sides: and having subdued those people that annointed the Country, dyed at *York*.

His Son *Antoninus Bassianus Caracalla*, made warre against the *Parthians* and *Armenians*. This was hee that commanded *Papinianus*, * Captaine of the Guard, to be put to death, for refusing to defend his [k] fratricide. In his time flourisht many Lawyers, and most of them *Papirianus* his Auditors, as *Turruntius*, *Paternus*, *Macer*, *Papirius Fronto*, *Arthius*, *Maximus*, *Hermogenianus Africanus*, *Florentinus*, *Triphoninus*, *Iustus Callistratus*, *Vennleius*, *Celsus*.

Caracalla 210. *an.* 6. *m.* 2. *d* 5.

* *præfectus Prætorij*, Governour of the Pretorian Cohort.

k For *Caracalla* slew his brother *Geta*.

After *Caracalla* was slaine *Ma-*

Macrinus 216. *an.* 1. *m.* 1. *d.* 28.

Macrinus ſucceeded, who having bad ſucceſſe in his wars againſt *Artabanus* King of the *Parthians*, and perceiving the legions encline to *Heliogabalus*, *Baſſianus* his Son, concluded a peace.

Heliogabalus 217. *an.* 3. *m.* 6. *d.* 4.

Alexander Severus 221 *an.* 13. *m.* 0. *d.* 9.

Alexander Severus, a ſtout ſouldier, ſucceſſor to *Heliogabalus* that moſt bruitiſh of men overthrew *Artaxerxes* King of the *Perſians* in maine battell: and recovered *Meſopotamia* which was loſt by *Heliogabalus*. Hee made warre by his Lievtenants in *Mauritania*, *Illyricum* and *Armenia*, and had good ſucceſſe: but afterwards in his expedition againſt the *Germanes*, who had forraged the Countrey of *Gallia*, was murthered by certaine of his owne ſouldiers. *Vlpianus* the Lawyer, *Pupinianus* his ſcholler was very intimate with him, and in his time lived *Paulus Pomponius*, and *Modeſtinus*.

To

To this *Alexander Maximinus* ſucceeded: Hee with maine forces marches into *Germanie*: his Army conſiſting not onely of *Romane* ſouldiers, but alſo of *Moores*, *Oſdronians* and *Parthians*, who had ſerved under *Alexander*. Hee burnt the Dorps in *Germany* farre and wide, put very many of his enemies to the ſword, and tooke many more priſoners returning with a wealthy Army: *Germany* being at peace hee marches to *Syrmium*, and was purpoſed to have made warre againſt the *Sarmatians*, nor onely ſo, but his further intent was, to have brought all thoſe Countries which lye northward even to the Ocean, in ſubjection to the *Romane* Empire: but his ſouldiers not enduring his cruelty, created *Gordianus* their Captaine Generall, which the Senate (bearing no good will, neither towards

Maximinus 234. an. 2.

Gordianus 236. m. 1. d. 6.

wards *Maximinus*) ratified and proclaimed the other enemie to the Common-wealth. Hee, going about to revenge this fact, first made an Oration to the army, and then set forward towards *Rome*: the Senate upon notice hereof proclaime *Pupienus* and *Balbinus* their Emperours: and to *Pupienus* was commitred the charge of the warre against *Maximinus*, who, togerher with his Sonne, was at the siege of [l] *Aquileia*, slaine by his owne souldiers as hee lay a sleepe in his Tent.

pupienus, Balbinus 236. an 1. some monthes.

l A City in *Italy.*

After this, *Pupienus* and *Balbinus* being both slaine in a mutiny amongst the souldiers in the second yeere of their raigne, the governement of the Empire was commited to *Gordianus* a young Gentleman. He in the fourth yeare of his raigne, marched through *Mæsia* and *Thracia* against the

Gordianus junior. 237. an. 6.

Per-

Perſians, and in their countries ſubdued the enemies of the *Romanes*; from thence, ſtriking through *Syria*, came to *Antiochia*, which was then held by the *Perſians*. There he fought divers battels, in ſo much as hee compelled the *Perſians*, who were in a manner accounted the terrour of *Italy*, to containe themſelves in their owne limits. At length, in the ſixth yeare of his Empire, he was ſlaine, being betrayed by *Phillip* Captaine of the Guard, who had raiſed a mutiny amongſt the ſouldiers. And this *Philip* alſo, who ſent over his Lievtenants with an armie againſt the *Scythians* that were up in Armes againſt the confederates of the *Romanes* and there free-boroughs came to the like end: *Decius* ſucceeded him, who being created Emperour by the Legions of *Illyricum*, and afterward

wards by consent of the Senate; first of all appeased the troubles in *Gallia*. Afterwards commending the care of the Common-wealth to the Senate; Hee, together with his Sonne, whom hee had made his Collegue in the Empire, sets forward (having the Senates consent thereunto) on his expedition against the *Scythians*, who both by sea and land forraged the countrey of *Thracia* and other dominions of the Empire: from whence (after some battels, having got the upper-hand, and drawne the enemy into a narrow straight place) hee had returned with compleat victory, had not *Gallus Hostilianus* Governour of the furthest part of *Mysia*, revealed his councell to the enemy: whereupon it came to passe, upon joyning battell, that both hee and his sonne (by treachery cir-

circumvented) were ſlaine.

After this, *Gallus* made Emperour by one of the Legions, and the remainder of the ſurviving ſouldiers, concluded a peace with the *Scythians*, to the diſhonour and ignominy of the *Romanes*, in that he promiſed to pay them tribute, never heard of before, and altogether unworthy the Majeſty of ſo renowned a ſtate. The *Scythians* hereupon growne more fierce, broke the League, over-runne *Dardania*, *Thrace*, *Theſſaly*, *Macedonia*, not reſting there, but *Aſia* alſo: overthrovving and ſubverting very many Cities. At length, many other Countries, after the example of the *Scythians*, turned enemies to the *Romans*, and many rebelled. The *Parthians* broke into *Syria*; and ſeized upon *Armenia*, putting their King *Tyridates* to flight. And ſuch vvas the inſolencie of

Gallus 250. *An.* 1. *m.* 6.

of the *Scythians*, that they threatned *Italy* alſo, and were likely to have done much miſchiefe, had not *Æmilianus*, Governour of *Myſia* upon the coaſt of *Sarmatia*, encouraging his ſouldiers with faire promiſes, and hope of rewards, given them an overthrow, and purſuing them very farre, tooke from them their owne Territories: for this cauſe the ſouldiers proclame him Emperour: and *Gallus* upon notice hereof marching forth to reſiſt them, was ſlaine, together with his Son *Voluſianus* his Collegue in the Empire.

Æmilian. 5. 252. M. 4.

In this age flouriſhed *Cyprian* Biſhop of *Carthage*, certaine of whoſe Epiſtles to *Lucius* Biſhop of *Rome*, whom hee calls his brother and collegue, are amougſt divers others, yet extant: and many more of his to *Cornelius*, where amongſt other matters, hee complaines of

of thoſe, who being for their offences condemned by the Biſhops of *Africa*, and degraded from their Prieſthood, had appealed to *Rome*: for it is fit, ſaith hee, that were the crime is committed, there the cauſe ſhould bee diſcuſſed. Sithence every Paſtor hath a certaine portion of a flocke committed to his charge, whereof he muſt render an account to the Lord: therefore the concord of Biſhops is not to bee abrogated, nor their decree to bee annihilated, who had already given ſentence in the cauſe, in *Africa*.

In the meane ſpace, another Army, lying in the Alpes, creates *Valerianus* Emperour, a man of Noble parentage, which when it came to the eares of *Æmilians* ſouldiers; they, to ſhake off all danger from themſelves, kill their owne Emperour, and fly to

Valerianus, 292. an. 7.

Valerianus his party. This *Æmilianus*, when hee was made Emperour, ſent his letters to the Senate, wherein he promiſed to deliver *Thracia* and *Meſopotamia* from the Enemy, to recover *Armenia*, and on every ſide to repell the enemies of the *Roman* State. *Valerianus* making war againſt the *Perſians*, was by fault of one of his Captaines taken priſoner, by *Saper* King of *Perſia*, whom the neighbouring Princes, and confederate Nations, councelled (but all in vaine) to have diſmiſſed. For it was the deſtiny of the *Romanes* to grow more valiant in reſiſtance, after they were conquered.

Gallienus, 295. an. 8.

Valerianus thus taken priſoner, his ſonne *Gallienus* ſucceeded. He wholly gave himſelfe to his pleaſures, neglecting the Common-wealth, inſomuch, as the Armies which lay diſperſed in the Provinces, elected

cted every one a new Emperour: as in *Gallia, Spaine*: the *Pannonia's*, *Illyricum*, *Egypt*, *Africa*, and the reſt: but partly by him, partly by civill diſſentions amongſt themſelves, all thoſe were overthrown. In his raigne, the *Gothes* ſeize upon *Thracia*, forrage *Macedonia*, and beſiege *Theſſalonica*: the *Scythians* invade *Bythinia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Aſia*, and ſtriking through the [n] *Euxine* ſea into [o] *Iſther*, offer hoſtility againſt the free-borroughs of the *Romans*, but ſo exceſſive was his reachleſneſſe, then when theſe newes of the Provinces revolt, and publike calamity came to his eares, his reply was in deriſion and ſcorne: as though all this could not hinder the ſubſiſtance of the Commonwealth, or the preſervation of the dignity thereof, or the ſtate thereof be any whit impaired thereby. Thus by this diſho-

n Which parteth *Europe* and *Aſia*.

o A River in *Illyricum* which begins in *Germany*, and is there called *Danubius* or *Danow*.

diſhonourable courſe of life, growne into contempt, as well at home as abroad, he got himſelfe many enemies in the common-wealth, the *Scythians* and *Gothes* mixt together with other Nations, being about 320000. ſtrong, were then up in Armes, and had conſpired the deſtruction of the *Romans*: but *Flavius Claudius* (who ſucceeded after *Galienus* was ſlaine) with much adoe vanquiſhed all thoſe in *Myſia* and other places.

Flavius Claudius, 167. An. 1. m. 9.

Hee was a man of great proweſſe, and worthy of a longer life. After *Claudius*, followed *Aurelianus*, becauſe his worth was eminent, having made evident proofe thereof in *Claudius* his raigne, againſt the Enemy in many places. Hee made warres in *Inſubria*, and with the *Marcomanes*: at the beginning, indeed with much hazard and jeopardy,

Aurelianus 269. an. 6.

but

but at length (after the *Sibyl-la's* bookes, by his command, were peruſed, and the Senate had purged Religion) with happy ſucceſſe. After his returne from thence to *Rome*, (where hee inflicted a penalty upon thoſe, who in his abſence had raiſed an inſurrection;) he made warre for recovery of thoſe Provinces which lay eaſtward, and in *Syria*, which *Zenobia* held, (a puiſſant and magnanimous Queene, and her owne childrens Tutrix) being left to her by her husband *Odenatus*, who in *Gallienus* his time, behaved himſelfe very couragiouſly and ſtoutly in thoſe parts.

Whereſoever this Emperour ſet his foot, there he overthrew the enemies of the *Romans*, as in *Illyricum*, *Thracia*, and the reſt: and at length arriving in the [d] enemies countrey, after no leſſe doubtfull

[d] *Syria.*

q *Zenobia.*

then dangerous battle, overthrew and tooke the q Queene; who relying upon the *Armenian* and *Persian* auxiliars, most valiantly resisted him. The chiefe Citie in that Countrey, (which hee subdued) was *Palmyra:* the Citizens whereof, upon the Emperours returne out of *Asia* into *Europe*, rebelled, killed their Governour, and maintayning a Garrison for their defence. But the Emperour making another expedition thither, demolished the conquered Citie, put all to the sword, not sparing any age or sexe. After this, hee recovered *Egypt*, which then had revolted, and of new reduced the *Gallia's* into the *Romane* subjection. Then hee triumphed at *Rome*, and from thence marching through *Illyricum*, proclaimed warre against the *Persians:* but in his journey, was slaine by his owne familiar friends

friends. After his death, there was a * vacancie for a † ſpace, which had never happened before, ſince *Romulus* his deceaſe. At length, *Tacitus* ſucceeded, who continuing Emperour but a few monthes, archieved no memorable exploit; him the Senate requeſted, that he would not ordaine his children his ſucceſſors after him in the Empire, but ſome man of approved worth and integrity; which was *Probus*, who being confirmed, as well by the Legions as the Senate, recovered *Gallia*, and in divers battles overthrew the ‡ *French*, a people of *Germany*, who had gotten poſſeſſion thereof. Hee vanquiſhed the *Sarmatians*, and other Nations in *Illyricum*; and coaſting through *Thracia*, with the very terrour of the name of the *Romanes*, and the greatneſſe of his noble exploits, obliged the

* *Interregnum.*

† For ſixe moneths, *Tacitus*, 275. *an.* 6.

Florianus, *an.* 2. *Probus* 476 *an.* 6. *m.* 4.

‡ Inhabiting *Francenia*, now called *Frankenlandt.*

barbarous people to his ſubjection: In *Aſia* hee ſetled a peace, and the fame only of his name, made the *Parthian* King ſue for peace. He concluded a peace with the *Perſians*, and from thence returned into *Thracia*, and tranſplanted thoſe forraigne Nations whom hee had ſubdued into the *Roman* territories; ſome whereof, continued in ſubjection, but others contrariwiſe, notwithſtanding, afterward hee vanquiſhed all or the greateſt part of them: and having compoſed the rebellions in *Gallia*, *Hiſpaine*, and *Britaine*, in his journey through *Illyricum*, towards his intended warre againſt the *Perſians*, was treacherouſly ſlaine, by his owne Souldiers.

At this time the Commonwealth flouriſhed, peace being ſetled in all Nations on every ſide farre and neere; in ſo much

as

as *Probus* would sometimes say, that the world would come to that passe shortly, that there would bee no need of Legions and Garrisons: but the souldiers offended at this his speech, thought it best to cut him off.

After him followed *Carus*: hee subdued the *Sarmatians*, who now, after *Probus* his death, were growne more insolent, and menaced even *Italy* it selfe: then making an expedition against the *Persians*, tooke *Mesopotamia*, and marching on further died.

Carus 282. *an.* 1. and some moneths together with his sonnes, *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

His younger sonne *Numerianus* served in the warres with him: his other sonne *Carinus* he had set over the *Gallia's*. *Numerianus* was slaine by his t wives father, and in his place came *Dioclesian*: with whom *Carinus* had divers conflicts about obtaining the Empire, but was overthrowne and

t *Arius*. *A per Dioclesian*, 284. *an.* 20.

ſlaine. *Diocleſian* in regard of the troubles and ſeditions, in many places kindling, tooke to him for his Collegue, *Maximianus*. Hee quieted the countrey of *Gallia*, then in commotion, as alſo *Africa*; and *Diocleſian* and *Egypt*, putting the Authors of theſe broiles to death. He recovered *Britaine* alſo in the 10. yeare after the revolt: and to the end that the ſtate of the Common-wealth might be more firme, and to avoid new commotions about ſucceſſion, he adopted *Galerius* and *Maximianus*, *Conſtantius*, *Chorius*. *Galerius* being ſent by *Diocletian* againſt *Narſes*, King of the *Parthians*, had ill fortune in that warre, loſing the major part of his Army: but afterwards commanded to renew the warre, hee overthrew the Enemy in maine battle, and marching on further in thoſe places, then any

any other Emperour, except *Trajan*, tooke *Ctesiphon*, subdued all *Assyria*, and recovered the five Provinces, lying beyond the River [u] *Tygris*, which had revoked in *Trajan* the Emperours time.

Diocletian having setled the affaires of *Asia*, returned into *Europe*, where the *Scythians*, *Sarmatians*, * *Alans*, [x] *Bastarnans*, [y] *Carpies*, *Chatties*, and *Quadies*, were then all in place. Afterwards both hee, as also *Maximianus* resigning their Soveraignty, invest their Collegues before mentioned, with the title of Emperours: *Constantine* of the *Gallia's*, *Britaine*, the *Hispanies*, *Italy*, and *Africa*; and *Galerius*, of *Illyricum*, *Greece*, and *Asia*: *Marcellus* was then Bishop of *Rome*, whose decree is extant, prohibiting Bishops from calling a Synode, without the authority of the See of *Rome*, as also to

u Running through *Armenia*.

* *Almaines* lying betwixt the *Alpes* and *Ments*, as *Carion* supposes.

x People of *Sarmatia*.

y Dwelling about the River *Corpis* in *Scythia*.

Constantius. *Galerius*. 304. an. 2. m. 3. an. 7. m. 8.

to condemne any Bishop who should appeale to *Rome*. But *Maxentius* the Emperour persecuting him, his estate as others before him, was both meane and miserable. Whereupon it may easily be conjectured, whether or no, he (in those perplexities and lurking corners) could take so much upon him, as to establish such manner of decrees.

At length *Constantius* dying at *Yorke*, *Galerius* adopted *Severus* and *Maximianus*. In the meane space, the Pretorian Souldiers at *Rome*, elect *Maxentius* their Emperour. After *Severus* was slaine, *Maximianus* made choise of *Licinius* for his Collegue in the Empire. Among those arose great troubles: whereupon the Nobles of *Rome* call home *Constantine*, *Constantius* his sonne, then employed in the *Gallia's* to rescue their Citie from the tyrannie

tyranny of *Maxentius*. Hee marching forward into *Italy*, with part of his army, in picht field, got the victory, and afterwards quite defeated *Maxentius* his forces at the City of *Rome*. After this, hee fought againſt *Licinius*, who being overthrowne in battell, and almoſt growne into hatred with all men, was at length ſlaine by his owne ſouldiers. Many write that the cauſe of this warre was, for that *Licinius* did bitterly perſecute the profeſſors of Chriſtianity, although hee had beene very often intreated and admoniſhed to the contrary by *Conſtantine*. For from the time of the reſurrection of Chriſt, untill this age, (almoſt three hundred yeeres) the profeſſors of Chriſt were diverſly puniſhed; omitting thoſe whereof the Scripture makes mention, as of [z] *Stephen*, [a] *Iames* the brother

Conſtantine the Gre at 306. *an.*30. *m.*6.*d.*27.

[z] Act.7.
[a] Act.11.

ther of *Iohn*, [b] *Peters* impriſonment and inlargement by the Angel; paſſing over it in ſilence; *Paul* likewiſe, who grievouſly perſecuted the Church of God, but after his converſion, eſcaped no kinde of puniſhment for Chriſts cauſe: the *Romane* Emperours alſo, as *Nero*, *Domitian*, *Trajan*, *Septimius*, *Severus*, *Decius*, *Valerian*, *Aurelian*, *Diocleſian*, and *Maximilian* committed moſt horrible and outragious maſſicres. But *Conſtantine* comming to the Empire, and imbracing the true Religion, afforded harbour and refuge to the Chriſtians. Then firſt of all begaune the Biſhops of *Rome* to live in ſafety: for till then, almoſt all of them, (who from *Peter* whom they will have to bee their firſt, are reckoned to thirty three) were tormented with perſecutions.

[b] Act. 9.

Their decrees are inſerted in the

the bookes of the Councels, but the greateſt part of them are ſo ſleight, triviall and quite different from the ſacred Scriptures, as makes it credible that they were a long time after forged by ſome others.

But if they be true, and proceeded from them, then indeed that which *Paul* by propheſie foretold, ſeemes moſt rightly to be applyed to this place, that then that ſonne of perdition and man of ſinne beganne to worke the myſterie of injquity. That decree yet extant goes under *Anacletus* his name, the fourth from *Peter*, as they reckon; wherein hee ordaineth the Church of *Rome* to bee (by Chriſts command and inſtitution) the head of other Churches. 2 Theſ.

To *Alexander* the next after him is that decree attributed, where he commands that the water ſhould be conſecrated

ted with ſalt, to purge the people, and to avoyd the ſnares of the Devill. But judge I pray you how far thoſe differ from that Majeſtie of the Apoſtles, how farre from the writings of S. *Iohn* the Evangeliſt, who almoſt lived till this very time. I have onely ſet downe theſe two decrees, that by them wee may judge of the reſt, for they are almoſt of the ſame mould, and carry open colour of ambition, and not onely the ſpeech wants the grace, but alſo the matter it ſelfe hath no ſalt in it, both which *Paul* requires in the Miniſters of the Church.

C S. Ierom. writes that he dyed in the 68 yeare after the paſſion. *Suidas* ſaies that hee li ved 120 yeares.

Coloſ. 6.

And to this place alſo appertaines, that decree of *Conſtantine* the Emperor, which they have inſerted into their books, for the foundation and bulwarke of their power. For the cauſe and occaſion of his exceſſive liberality, which is there ſet downe, may out of hiſtory,

In conferring (as they imagin) the City of *Rome* the Empire of the Weſt, &c. upon the Popes.

be diſproved and convicted of falſhood. Further, bee it granted that the Emperor was thus moſt exceedingly profuſe, perhaps for himſelfe onely, hee might herein abate of his own right, but could not doe it, for his ſucceſſors, authorized with coequal power, and Protectors of the Common-wealth. For hee who damnifies the freedome and liberties of his Empire, ought not to have the title of Father of his Countrey, nor can hee ordaine another to ſhare with him in equality of authority, or prejudice the ſame.

By *Conſtantine* the Emperors appointment, a moſt populous Councell was called and aſſembled at *Nice*, a City in *Bythinia*, wherein the hereſie of *Arius*, denying Chriſt to be coequall in ſubſtance with his father, was condemned. Is recorded that many Biſhops, not

The firſt Councel of *Nice* held in *An.* 325. continued 3 yeares.

not onely out of *Europe* and *Asia*, but also out of *Ægypt* and *Lybia*, met together there. Amongst other, one decree was, that through *Egypt*, *Lybia*, and *Pentapolis*; the ancient custome should bee maintained, that is, all the Bishops there should remaine under superiority of the Bishop of *Alexandria*, notwithstanding the vsurpation and withholding thereof by the Bishop of *Rome*: as also that the Church of *Antioch* and orher Provinces and Churches should each one entirely retaine their peculiar privileges. After this Councell, certaine lewd opinions were vented, (one *Eustathius* being Author) about shunning of marriage, about a new and unusuall kind of habite, about forbearance to eate flesh, and forsaking propriety of possessions. And hereupon (many husbands procuring a divorce, and

In monasticall manner, and some women attired in mens habite.

and ſervants leaving their maſters, betaking themſelves to this new and religious habite, as they call it; women likewiſe taking the ſame courſe, forſaking their husbands: and thoſe who fed upon fleſh, as alſo the Miniſters of the Church that were married being publickly contemned, as perſons impure and unacceptable to God:) a Councell was aſſembled at *Gangra* a towne in *Paphlagonia*, wherein thoſe were condemned, who either taught or held that opinion.

Conſtantine (for re-eſtabliſhing a peace in the Commonwealth) being with moſt generall acclamation, confirmed both by the Senate and people of *Rome*, turned himſelfe wholy to forraigne warres, and after many battels overthrew the *Gothes* and *Samaritans*, then foraging the Countrey of *Thracia*: afterwards being ſtrucken

ſtrucken in yeares, he proclaimed warre againſt the *Perſians*, who waſted the Country of *Meſopotamia*: and in *Aſia*, where he was arrived with his Army, (after receipt of a medicine for recovery of his health) breathed his laſt, not without ſuſpicion of poyſon. This is he by ſurname, ſtiled the Great, who named *Byzantium* a City of *Thracc*, after his owne [f] name, and thither tranſlated the Imperiall Seat. Hee began his [g] raigne about the three hundred and twelfth yeere after the birth of Chriſt. It is written that Comets of wonderfull greatneſſe, were ſeene before his death. Hee left three Sons, *Conſtantine*, *Conſtantius* and *Conſtance*, amongſt thoſe was the body of the Empire divided, to *Conſtantine* part of the *Alpes*, *Gallia*, *Hiſpaine*, *Britaine*, [h] the *Orcades*, *Ireland*, and [i] *Thyle*, were allot-

[f] His deſire was to have it called *New Rome*, but uſe prevailed and altered it to *Conſtantinople*.

[g] At *Rome* but he raigned 6 years before in *Britaine* and elſewhere.

[h] The Iland of *Orkney* lying neere and belonging to *Scotland*.

[i] Now called *Iſland*, lying beyond *Scotland*, as ſome ſay, others *Hitland*.

allotted: to *Conſtans*, *Italy*, *Africa*, with the Ilands, *Illyricum*, *Macedonia*, *Achaia*, *Penoponneſus*, and *Greece*: to *Conſtantius*, *Aſia*, and *Thrace*.

Conſtantine 337. *An.* 3. *Conſtantius* 337. *An.* 24. *Conſtance* 337. *An.* 12.

Conſtantine not ſatisfied with this diviſion, made warre upon his brother *Conſtance*, and at *Aquileia* (whither he was then come) joyning battell with *Conſtance* his forces, loſt both his army, and his life. *Conſtance* who in the meane time, was up in Armes againſt the [k] *Getes* and *Sarmatians* in *Dacia*, returnes into *Italy*, and having gotten the *Alpes*, invaded *Gallia*, and in two yeares ſpace won all his deceaſed brothers dominions, but was ſlaine within a while after by the treachery and crafty dealing of *Magnentius*. Him, the ſouldiers (before hand, allured and inveigled with rewards) elected Emperor. *Conſtantius* the onely ſurviving brother of the three,

[k] The ſame who were afterwards called *Gothi* *Carion.*

three, upon notice heereof, (deputing *Gallus* his unckles ſon, and ſiſters husband, his Vice-gerent over *Aſia*) marches with a ſtrong army into *Italy*, and ſo into *Gallia*, where in maine battell hee overthrew the enemy. But *Magnetius* eſcaping, ſends his Ambaſſadors to ſue for peace. Whoſe ſuit the Conqueror rejecting, hee on a freſh, wages battell againe, but with ill ſucceſſe: thereupon flying to *Lyons*, where perceiving his owne friends to conſpire his deſtruction, and not having any corner where to hide himſelfe, became his owne executioner. Afterwards *Conſtantius* commanded *Gallus* his Coſin germane, and Vicegerent for *Aſia*, as aboveſaid, (who abuſed his authoritie and power) to bee put to death, when hee could not otherwiſe remedy it. After this he returnes into *Aſia*, with intent

tent to prosecute the warre in *Persia*, which, by reason of *Magnetius* his faction abovementioned, he had broken off. And in regard the *Germanes* about this time, making an inroad into *Gallia*, forraged the Countrey there, hee adopted his other Cosen germane *Iulianus*, *Gallus* his brother, and to him committed the protection of *Gallia*. *Iulianus* (having had prosperous successe in his designes, and in many battels gotten the upper hand) beate backe the enemie beyond the *Rhyne*, tooke many prisoners, and rescued many *Roman* souldiers out of prison, and at [1] *Argentine* almost quite cut off the Enemies whole army. Hereupon the souldiers proclaime him not onely *Cæsar*, but also *Augustus*, and set a Diadem upon his head, but against his will as he pretended. For in his letters to *Constantius* he indeavoured

[1] Stratsburg in Germany.

devoured to remove the envy of the fact from himselfe.

But *Constantius* hereat grievously offended, ceasing his war in *Persia*, and liberally and kindely entreating his neighbouring Nations, that they might continue their alegiance, sets forward on his journey to reduce *Iulianus* to his duty, but on the way whilst hee was yet in *Asia*, being taken with a fever, ended his life, first ordaining *Iulianus* his successor.

Iulianus 361. an. 1. m. 7. d. 3.

During *Iulianus* his raigne the enemies contained themselves within their owne bounds, not raising any commotion in any place. Hee himselfe went out against the *Persians*, and forraging *Assyria* (having put the Enemies forces to flight) marched forwards as farre as *Ctesiphon*. At length returning home with his forces, the enemie set upon him in the rere, where, fighting in the midst

midst of his Souldiers in the maine battalia, hee received a wound, whereof, within a while after he died, an enemy to the name of Christ. The souldiers having thus lost their Leader, being plunged in great distresse, create *Iovinianus* Emperour: at what time *Iulius* the first of that name was Bishop of *Rome*: certaine of whose Epistles to the Bishops of the East, are yet extant, in which hee often presses it, that to *Him* alone, as Bishop, saith hee, of the chiefe See, by a certaine singular priviledge and divine ordinance, belongeth the right of convocating Generall Councels. But it may seeme wonderfull, with what face hee could write thus; or they so boast of it, when as before him, *Constantine* had called the Councell of *Nice*; and after him, a hundred yeares full, *Martianus* the Emperor called

Iovinianus, 363. an. 7. d. 22.

the Councell of *Chalcedon*. To him alſo alone, as Primate of that Citie, ſaith hee, appertaines the cognizance of Epiſcopall cauſes, and other matters of that kind of more weighty importance. This his arrogancie the Biſhops could not endure. But aſſembling at *Antioch*, boldly reply: That it was not fit, that the ſentence by them paſſed ſhould bee repealed by him, for that they were poſſeſſed of the ſame degree of dignity, whereof hee was, and the doctrine of Chriſt, came from their countries to *Rome* * at the ſecond hand, by the paines and miniſtery of the Apoſtles. Wherefore in caſe he ſhould proceed, and make new decrees, they would not obey them, neither have communion with him, but would take ſuch a courſe as the matter it ſelfe ſhould require. And in another Councell

* *Tandem.*

cell in the ſame Citie (of greater concourſe then the former) amongſt other decrees, they limit the office of a Biſhop, as alſo of a Metropolitane, about diſcuſſing matters of more weighty importance. For they decreed, that in caſe the Biſhops concurre not, the Metropolitane of the next adjoyning Province, ſhall delegate certaine Iudges to determine the cauſe. But if any Biſhop bee condemned for any offence by common decree of the reſt of the Biſhops, they ordaine that their ſentence ſhall ſtand firme, and not bee repealed by another. They farther eſtabliſh, that the Biſhop ſhall faithfully diſpence the * goods of the Church, and diſtribute them to the uſe of the poore, and that hee himſelfe if need require, may take from thence as much as ſhall bee neceſſary for naturall ſuſtentation. For Saint

* *Bona ſacra.*

1. *Tim.*6.8. *Paul* ſaith, *Wee ought to be content with food and rayment.* Which goods if the Biſhop, ſay they, ſhall perchance convert into his owne or his friends private commodity, or commit the adminiſtration thereof to his kindred, he is to be reſtrained by a Councell.

At length *Iovinianus* (the Enemy being at his backe) concluded a diſhonourable peace, redelivering thoſe five Provinces beyond *Tygris*, (wonne by *Galerius*, as above mentioned) as alſo part of *Meſopotamia:* and afterwards covenanted that the *Romanes* ſhould lend no aid to the King of *Armenia* their friend and confederate. Marching forth with his Army, as hee was returning home died upon the borders of *Bythinia.* The Souldiers foorthwith create *Valentinianus* Emperour, who ſoone after his comming to

Con-

Constantinople, tooke his brother *Valens* to be his Collegue in the Empire, and commending these [m] Countries to his care, marched into *Germany*, where hee subdued the *Saxons*, bordering upon the Ocean, and soone after hee had beene in *Gallia*, [n] died as it is written upon a vehement passion of anger. By this time his brother *Valens* was arrived in *Asia*, to represse the *Parthians*, forraging the Countrey of *Armenia*, and the King of *Persia*, who breaking the league, was falne into open hostility: But after the *Hunnes* or *Tartars*, and *Scythians* had over-runne *Pannonia*, *Epirus*, and *Thessaly*, he returnes into *Europe*, where in a pitcht battle being overthrowne; and as he fled wounded, and carried into a little cottage, which the Enemy setting on fire, hee there died. That Edict of *Valentinianus* the

Valentinianus, 364. *Aet.* 11. *m.* 8. *d.* 22. together with his brother *Valens*.

m Of the East.

n In *Pannonia* falling into a fever by an excessive straining of his voice in an angry reply against some offenders.

Emperour, and of *Valens*, is yet extant, wherein it is provided, That those who betake themselves to a monasticall life and solitarinesse, and in that regard escape warfare and publike impositions, shall bee drawne out of their Cels, and either serve for their country, or else forfeit all those benefits, afterwards conferred upon them, that undergoe both paines and perill for the Common-wealth.

Gratian 375. an.7. m 9. d,5. With his sonne *Valentinian* the II.

The Enemies not long after (appeased by the Emperours gift and money) departed from *Constantinople*, which they then besieged; *Saxony* being at peace, *Valentinian* the Emperour chose his sonne *Gratianus* for his Collegue: who, after his Father and Vncle *Valens* their decease, succeeded them both. But hee (the Common-wealth being tossed with divers billowes of troubles) assumed

ſumed *Theodoſius* a worthy Commander in warre, and ſent him into the Eaſterne Countries. There at *Conſtantinople* he vanquiſhed the *Huns* and *Gothes*, and chaſed them out of the Coaſts of *Thrace*. After this, *Gratianus* was treacherouſly ſlaine in *Gallia*, by *Maximus* one of his Coronels who affected the Empire. *Auſonius* of *Burdeaux* (certaine of whoſe Poems are yet extant) was his Tutor for literature, whom afterwards he advanced to the dignity of a Conſull, His ſon *Valentinianus* alſo died, in maner of the ſame death, by the treachery of his familiar friend *Arbogaſtus*. But the Murtherers eſcapt not ſcot-free, for both of them were ſlaine by *Theodoſius* the Emperour. *Maximus* was taken and put to death at *Aquileia*, and the other acted that part himſelfe.

Thoſe Tyrants thus cut

Theodosius, 378. *an.* 16. *d.* 12.

off, *Theodosius* posseſt of the Empire, ordaines his two ſons, *Honorius* and *Arcadius* his Collegues: to whom by reaſon of their nonage hee appointed Protectors, or as it were Governours: to *Arcadius* hee aſſigned *Ruffinus*, and to *Honorius Stilico*; and not long after departed his life: by his command a Councell was held at *Conſtantinople*, wherein the hereſie of *Macedonius*, who derogated from the Divinity of the holy Ghoſt, was condemned. The Fathers there aſſembled, being as it is recorded, 150. in number, ordained Biſhops, both there, as alſo at *Antiochia*, which they ſtile the elder and truely Catholike Church, and at *Ieruſalem* which they call the Mother of all Churches. They tranſmitted thoſe their proceedings to *Damaſus* Biſhop of *Rome*, who endeavoured to call them to

The ſecond Councell of *Conſtantinople*. *An.* 381.

to *Rome*. Saint *Hierome* when hee was young, was familiar with this *Damaſus*. He was the Author of that memorable ſaying. Whereſoever the Biſhop is, be it at *Rome*, *Eugubium*, *Conſtantinople*, *Rhegium*, or *Alexandria*, he is of the ſame demerit and Prieſt-hood. *Theodoſius* hath the fame for a very godly Prince, who being reprehended by S. *Ambroſe* Biſhop of *Millaine*, and prohibited entrance into the Church tooke it patiently.

Arcadius governed in the Eaſt at *Conſtantinople*, and *Honorius* at *Rome*. But *Ruffinus* with intent to tranſlate the Empire to himſelfe, underhand incited the King of the *Gothes* to make warre againſt *Arcadius*: whoſe treachery being diſcloſed, hee was ſlaine by the Souldiers.

Arcadius, 395 an 13. m 3. d. 15. Together with *Honorius*, who raigned about 15. yeares after the death of *Arcadius*.

Innocent the firſt of that name, excommunicated *Arca-*

dius the Emperour, for that he gave consent to have S. *Iohn Chrysostome* expelled out of his Church, as it is related in the Papali Law. At this time flourisht Saint *Augustine* also, Bishop of *Hippo*, who was present at the third and fourth Councell of *Carthage*, where amongst others, those decrees passed: That the Bishop should have a little mansion house neere to his Church.

That his houshold stuffe should be meane, his table and provision poore, and by his uprightnesse and integrity of life should get himselfe authority. That he should use the utensils of the Church, as things committed to his charge, and not as his owne.

This *Innocent* the first writ also to Saint *Augustine*, and to *Aurelius* Bishop of *Carthage*, where exhorting them to mutuall prayers, hee cals them brothers

thers, and fellow-priests. After *Innocent* followed *Zozimus*, who commending the decrees of the Fathers, and of antiquity, saith that it is not lawfull, no not for the See of *Rome*, as they call it, to make any alteration therein, or any contradictory Decree. Hee also reprehends and corrects the custome of his time, that many men of no learning, aspired to the order of Priesthood. *Boniface* the first succeeded *Zozimus*, in whose time the sixth Councell of *Carthage* was assembled, whereto there was great concourse, wherein Saint *Austine* also was present. *Boniface* sending his Legates thither, declared that the Councell of *Nice* had granted such priviledge to the See of *Rome*, that all Provinces every where, should appeale thither: and therefore requested the Fathers there assembled, to establish and

and confirme the ſame. Their anſwere was, that as far as they knew, there was not any ſuch Decree at *Nice*; but that the certaine truth might be ſifted out and knowne, they were agreed to ſend for a true copie of the Councell, from the Churches of *Alexandria* and *Conſtantinople*; which being at length produced, the Decree was found quite contrary: to wit, each Province ſhould have the cognizance of their owne cauſes, and that an ape peale ſhould lye from the Biſhops to the Councels of the Province, or elſe to the *Oecumenicall* Councell, as they call it. S. *Cyril* was then Biſhop of *Alexandria*. *Boniface* died before the copie came, and his ſucceſſor *Celeſtinus* urging the ſame, had his anſwer according to the tenour of that Decree.

Arcadius dying, his ſonne *Theo-*

Theodosius the II. succeeded, in whose raigne, and by whose command, a Councell was held at *Ephesus*, in which *Nestorius* was condemned, who denyed that Christ was borne God of the Virgin *Mary*, and at this time dyed S. *Augustine*. On the other side *Stilico Honorius* his Protector dealt no lesse perfidiously than *Ruffinus*: For hee not onely gave the *Gothes* leave to inhabite and seate themselves in *Gallia*, but also instigated them to march into *Italy*, with their Leader *Alaricus*, and took the City of *Rome*, which hapned in the yeare of *Rome* built 1162, and of our Lord 412.

Theodos. II. 408. *an* 42. *m.* 2. *d.* 28.

The *Gothes* keeping their Rendezuous at *Rome* for a while, and harrazing the Countrey till they came to [n] *Rhegium*, from thence sayled over into *Sisily*, where they suffered shipwracke, and lost their

n A Sea-coast town in *Italy*, now called *Regio*, opposite to *Sicilie*.

their King. But *Stilico* ſtill continuing his villainous and treacherous practices, with intent to tranſlate the ſway of government into his owne Sonne *Eucherius* his hands, was (upon diſcovery of his plot) taken, and by *Honorius* his command put to death. King *Alaricus* thus diſpatcht, the *Gothes* elected his kinſman *Adolphus* their King, and under his leading marcht backe againe to *Rome*, where, what remained, they ſpoyle. He being ſlaine, *Genſericus* raigned, after whoſe death followed *Wallis*, with whom *Conſtantine*, *Honorius* his ſiſters husband and Lieutenant for the *Gallia's*, as afterwards Colleague in the Empire, entered into amity and league, granting them *Aquitania* a part of *Gallia* to inhabite.

At the ſame time the *Scots* and *Picts* infeſted *Britaine*, but

but were put to flight by the auxiliary forces ſent from *Honorius* the Emperour; likewiſe the *Vandals* and *Alans*, with their Chieftaine, *Genſericus* pillaged up and downe *Hiſpaine*.

After *Honorius* his deceaſe at *Rome*, his Siſters ſonne *Valentinianus* ſucceeded him in the Weſt, and at *Rome*. *Theodoſius Arcadius* his ſon, as above recited, in the meane ſpace governed the other part of the world at *Conſtantinople*.

About this time the *Vandals*, and *Alans*, (provoked by the diſſentions and factions of the *Romane* Captaines in *Africa*) breake forth out of the *Hiſpaines* into *Africa*, and waſted the country with fire and ſword. After which deſtruction a certaine part of *Africa* was given them to inhabite.

The *Gothes* (who by *Honorius* his permiſſion and conſent

as

as a little above mentioned, inhabited *Aquitaine* in *Gallia*) not ſatisfied with their owne bounds, offered violence and injurie to their neighbours: and wearied *Narbon* with their ſiege. But *Litorius* being diſpatcht thither with forces, rayſed the ſiege, ſet the Towne at liberty, brought in proviſion, and giving them battell, at the firſt ſped well, but afterwards was taken with the loſſe almoſt of his whole army: ſo great was this overthrow that the *Romans* were forced to ſue for peace. In like manner *Genſericus* King of the *Vandales* breaking the league made with the *Romanes* in *Africa*, as before mentioned, on a ſudden ſurprizes *Carthage*, where hee exerciſed much cruelty: which City had then continued in ſubjection to the *Romans*, for 585. yeares. Thus having got poſſeſſion of *Carthage*, hee

ſtrikes

ſtrikes over into *Sicily*, which hee made flow with blood. Hereupon *Theodoſius* the Emperour rigging a Navie, prepares for warre againſt the *Vandals*, but by reaſon the *Hunnes* forraged *Thrace* and *Illyricum*, the army was recalled out of *Sicily*, to defend thoſe parts. The *Scots* and *Picts* then againe make an irruption into *Britaine*, and the inhabitants deſpairing of ayde from the *Romanes*, deſire helpe from the *Engliſh*, a people of *Saxonie*: who being allured with the beautifulneſſe of the Country, by little and little conveying over more forces (oppreſſing the *Britaines*) brought the greateſt part of the Iland into their ſubjection. Not long after this, *Theodoſius* the ſecond, dyed at *Conſtantinople*; in whoſe raigne, as it is written, the Sunne was doubled, and a comet appeared almoſt from

The *Saxons* invade *Britaine* about 448.

from the Ides of *July*, till the month of *September*.

Martianus 450. an. 6 m. 6.

Martianus succeeded *Theodosius* in the East. Wee have above mentioned *Genfericus*, with whom *Valentinianus* concluded a peace, dividing *Affrica* betwixt them. About this time, *Athila* King of the *Huns*, having got *Dacia* and *Pannonia*, moſt cruelly harazed the neighbouring Countries: *Macedonia*, *Myſia*, *Thracia*, intending to conquer the Eaſterne part of the *Romane* Empire. But perceiving that the warre would be extreame difficult, in regard the *Gothes* (who then were in league with the *Romanes*, and inhabited part of *Gallia*, as aboveſayd) ayded the *Romans*, therefore by his Ambaſſadours, hee requires their amity and confederacy, but *Ætius Valentinianus* the Emperours Lievtenant prevented that; who corrobo-

roborating the league with *Theodoricus* king of the *Gothes*, wholly bent himselfe to the warre. *Athila* nevertheless proceeds, and in the Downes of *Chaalons*, (which is part of *France* in regard of the Plaines in *Campaigne*) was this most dismall battell fought, in which as it is recorded, 180000 men were slaine. And *Athila* loosing the day, determined to kill himselfe, least he should fall alive into the hands of his enemies. Howbeit King *Theodoricus* his sonne, following *Ætius* the Lievtenants counsaile, returned home with his forces, to succeed his deceased Father: whereby *Athila* getting time to recollect himselfe, retires into *Pannonia*, and levying new forces, marches, full swolne with revenge, into *Italy*. where at length, winning the City of *Aquileia*, (first wearied out with a long

long-continuing siege) sackt and burnt it. Then forthwith he takes *Concordia*, *Padua*, *Vicentia*, *Verona*, *Brecia*, *Bergamo*, *Millaine* and *Pavie*; and so pillaging up and downe o *Flamina*, incamped at the meeting of the River of *Mencius* and *Po*: where deliberating about his passage to *Rome*, with his army, *Leo* the first of that name, Bishop of *Rome*, comes to him, and so farre prevailed, that altering his intent, hee not onely surceased his expedition to *Rome*, but also quite removing out of *Italy*, returned into *Pannonia*, where within a while after hee ended his dayes.

o *Romandiola.*

This was that *Leo*, many of whose Epistles to *Theodosius* the second, and *Martianus* the Emperours, are extant, wherein hee partly apologizes for his absence from the Councels by them convocated, and intreats them

them not to be offended for ſending thither of his Legates; and partly alſo requeſts, that they would deſigne ſome place in *Italy*, rather than in *Aſia*, for the celebrating of Councels: but he ordained nothing.

Whileſt *Athila* thus raged up and downe *Italy*, the City of *Venice* was builded; when many of the abler ſort, leaving the adjoyning places, betooke themſelves to thoſe ſea-ſands, little Iſlands, and hillockes, as into ſome harbour. Thus meane and in a manner deſperate and miſerable, was the beginning of this City, which now, as we ſee, is growne to a wonderfull greatneſſe. They reckon 805. Dukes till this time; the firſt whereof was p *Paulus Anazatus*, in the yeare of grace, 706. being 252. yeares after the beginning of the building of their City. After-

Venice begun to be built. an. 430.

p Some Authors call him *Paulutius Anafeſtus*, and write of his beginning in *Anno Dom* 697. and after their City built 282.

Afterwards when *Valentinianus* was ſlaine, *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, ſayling over with a Navie from *Africa* into *Italy*, marches with an exceeding great army (being ayded by the *Moores*) towards *Rome*, and takes the City, in a manner left quite deſolate: but at the earneſt requeſt of *Leo* the Biſhop, who alſo, as aforeſaid, appeaſed *Athila*: hee forbore fire and ſword: The City-ſackt, captives vvere tranſported to *Carthage* in great troopes. The enemies after this infeſt *Campania* vvith grievous outrages, raze *Capua*, *Nola*, *Naples*, and other Cities: thoſe vvho ſurvive the ſvvord, they condemne to the irons, and grovvne rich vvith the vvealth of *Italy*, returne into *Affrica*.

Martianus, Emperor of the Eaſt, a Prince of a calme nature

ture, injoyed peace: hee was wont to ſay, *That it was not fitting for a Prince to take armes, as long as he might live in peace.* In his raigne, and by his command, a very great Councell was aſſembled at *Chalcedon*, wherein *Eutyches*, who confounded the two natures in Chriſt, was condemned.

The fourth Councell at *Chalcedon* in *Bithinia.*

There, amongſt the reſt, it was decreed, that no Cleirke, as they call them, ſhould bee admitted to the Churches of two Cities. Plurality of livings, as wee terme it, was not then heard of, which now is growne ſo ordinary, as nothing is more common. And almoſt within our memory, that cuſtome crept in amongſt other blemiſhes of the Church, that the Pope may conferre two Biſhoprickes upon one man. If now therefore hee would reſtore the cuſtome in this behalfe, which was held

held in the next precedent age, hee ſhould doe his duty, but ſeeing that cannot bee, can we ſuppoſe it ever to be granted, that matters ſhall be amended according to the holy Scriptures, and decrees of the Apoſtles and primitive times? No, they toyle in vaine, that ballance the deedes of the Popes, with the rules of ancient Religion.

Leo 457. an. 17.

Marianus dying in the ſeventh yeare of his Empire, *Leo* ſucceeded him: and *Avitus*, (when *Genſericus* after the taking of *Rome*, was returned into *Africa*) ſucceeded *Valentinianus* at *Rome*, and in the Weſt next to him, *Majoranus*, then *Severus*, and after him, *Anthemius*: after thoſe followed others, but nothing eminent, who periſhed in their mutuall maſſacres and treacheries, and raigned but a while, inſomuch that now the other part

part of the *Roman* Empire in the West, stood in great danger.

Nothing memorable is recorded of *Leo* the Emperour, but that hee entred into amity and league with the *Gothes*, then wasting *Illyricum*, and an Epistle or two of *Leo* the Bishop of *Rome* to him, are extant. *Zeno* q *Isauricus* was his successor. Amongst those also who ruled in *Rome*, after *Valentinianus* his death, *Augustulus* was one, in whose raigne, *Odoacer* with a maine Army of *Herulians* and *Syrians*, out of *Pannonia* invades *Italy*, takes *Orestes*, a noble man of *Rome*, who was fled to *Pavie* with his Forces, puts him to death, sackes and burnes the Citie: and marching on, takes in the whole Countrey as far as *Rome*. *Augustulus* dejected in mind, voluntarily resignes his Empire: *Odoacer* enters the Citie,

Zeno 474. an. 17. m. 2. d 7.

q Called *Isauricus*, because hee was borne in *Isaurica* in Cicilia.

and obtayning the Kingdome of *Italy*, governed without resistance foureteene yeares. But at length, *Theodoricus* King of the *East-Gothes*, sent by *Zeno* the Emperour, marching from *Constantinople*, overthrew the [r] *Gepides* and *Bulgarians*, opposing him; and so making his way through *Mysia*, and *Pannonia*, arrives in *Italy*, and incamps himselfe not farre from *Aquileia*: whither *Odoacer* afterwards repayring, a sharpe battle insued. *Odoacer* losing the day, fled; but recollecting his Forces joynes battle on fresh, and is againe overthrowne, most part of his Armie lost, some whereof perished in battle; others in [f] *Athesis*. Hee flies amaine towards *Rome*, where shut out, he spoiles the Countrey about, and comes to *Ravenna*: there at length, after three yeares siege, upon the Cities yeelding

r Part of the *Gothes*.

f A River running through *Verona*.

ding, hee was taken and put to death.

Odoacer thus cut off, *Theodoricus* became Lord of *Italy*, marches to *Rome*, where hee assembled two Councels of Bishops, whom hee called together out of sundry Provinces of *Italy*, to sit upon [t] *Symmachus* his cause, whom the greatest part refused, as one unworthy, and falsely created. This *Theodoricus* was an *Arian*, as the *Papall* bookes have it. His surname was [v] *Veronensis*, and was descended from that *Theodoricus* above mentioned, who was slaine in the battle against *Athila* King of the *Hunnes*. *Odoacer* was a [*] *Rugian*, a people of *Germany*, upon the *Danish* sea. *Theodoricus* thereby to strengthen himselfe, obliged the Kings of the *Vandals*, *Visigothes*, and *Burgundians* to him by affinity.

[t] Pope of *Rome*.

[u] Because of his victory at *Verona*.

[*] Of *Rugerland* in *Pomerania*.

Whilest the squares went

thus in *Italy*, great troubles were on foot, throughout *Thrace*, *Africa*, and *Britaine*, where at length, the *Saxons* got the upper hand.

Anastatius, 491. an. C. 2. m. 3. d. 3.

Zeno dying at *Constantinople*, *Anastatius* succeeds him. Hee favoured many of those, who allowed of *Eutyche* his opinion, whereupon a dissention grew betwixt him and *Gelasius* Bishop of *Rome*: who by tedious letters dehorts him, as their bookes have it, from undertaking the protection of them: for there were two things saith he, whereby principally this world should bee governed; the sacred authority of Bishops, and regall power: and so much the more charge lies upon the Priests for that they, even for other men, must render an account to the Lord: but he was to governe for civill policie, yet so, as to bee subject to the Ministers

sters of God, and to depend uppon their judgements: and seeing that Priests doe obey the lawes politicall, it is likewise just, that hee himselfe should not refuse those constitutions, which the Steerisman in matters divine establish: therefore sithence this honour ought to be given to all Ministers of the Church, the cause it selfe requires, that to him most especially it should bee attributed, whom God by his owne word as also the consent of the Church, would have to rule over the whole order of Priests. Let him leave off therefore, and rather heare him an excuser in this life, then find him an accuser in the other. After this, his decree concerning the holy Bible is annexed, in which hee grants superiority to the Sea of *Rome*, as they call it, then to *Alexandria*, and the third place to *Antiochia*.

In *Anaſtatius* his raigne, *Sicily* was toſſed with troubles and hoſtile inſurrections, which were quenched by the Authors death. Then alſo the *Hunnes* waſted *Armenia*, and *Cappadocia*: the *Getes*, *Macedonia*, *Theſſalie*, and *Epirus*: from both which the Emperour was enforced to buy his peace by gifts, and no ſmall loſſes.

Much about this time, which was in the yeare of Grace, 500. *Clodoveus* King of the *French*, firſt of all imbraced the Chriſtian Religion, having beene very oft and earneſtly ſolicited thereunto, as alſo to forſake his Idols and ſuperſtition by his wife, who was of the houſe of *Burgundy*. The Councell of *Orleans*, in his raigne eſtabliſhed, which conſiſted of thirty three French Biſhops, is extant: wherein amongſt the reſt, it is decreed that

that if the raviſher of a Virgin ſhall fly to a Church, though hee have offered violence to the *Virgin*, yet hee ſhall not come within danger of death: but ſhall either bee as a bond-ſlave, or elſe redeeme himſelfe from her.

Anaſtatius ſlaine by lightning, or as the Papall Law ſpeakes, dying upon an * eruption of his bowels: *Iuſtinus* ſucceeded, a man of obſcure parentage, and from a ſwine-heard made a Souldier, as it is written. Hee was at diſſention with *Theodoricus* King of the *Gothes*, Lord of *Italy*, about diverſity of Religion, but yet they held off from blowes: *Theodoricus* dying, *Alaricus* his Grand-child by his ſonne ſucceeded, to the great joy and contentment of the *Gothes*. *Iohn* the firſt of that name, was then Biſhop of *Rome*. He with other more, was ſent in Am-

(* *Sleiden* (as *Meibomius* notes) he miſtakes the Emeperour for Pope *Anaſtatius*. *Iuſtine*. 518 *an*. 9. *d*. 24.

baſſage, by the afore-mentioned King *Theodoricus*, to *Conſtantinople*: where, as their bookes relate, he was moſt honourably entertained, not only by the people, but alſo by the Emperour himſelfe. For they, ſay they, were exceeding joyfull, that it was their fortune, now at length to ſee and entertaine the bleſſed Saint *Peters* Vicar, as they terme him, in *Greece*; which had never befallen them before ſince *Conſtantines* time the Great, and *Sylveſters*. But it is ſtrange that they ſhould prate thus of *Sylveſter*, who came not into *Greece*, as it is manifeſt: For, then when it was moſt behooſefull, as alſo needfull, I meane at the Councell of *Nice*, hee ſtirred not, but ſent thither his Legates, *Victor* and *Vincent*: and afterwards as they relate, hee himſelfe aſſembled another Councell at *Rome*, wherein

wherein hee confirmed the decrees of the Councell of *Nice*, where is extant also, a consolatory Epistle of this *Iohn* the first to the Bishops of *Italy*, wherein hee exhorts them, that albeit King *Theodoricus* polluted with *Arian* heresie, threatned destruction to them, and to all *Italy*, yet they should not desist from their purpose, but resolutely proceed.

After *Iustine*, his sisters son *Iustinianus* was made Emperour: Hee wholly bent himselfe to the restoring of the Common-wealth, and at his first entrance set over the whole charge of government to *Belisarius*, who by many great battles, overcame the *Persians*, transgressing their bounds, and offering violence to the *Romane* Dominion: set free *Illyricum*, wasted by the *Gepides* and *Bulgarians*, reduced

Iustinianus, 527. an. 38. m. 3. d 13.

ced the *Parthians*, being up in Armes, to amity: overthrew the *Vandals* moſt powerfull Forces in *Africa*, recovered *Carthage*; and from thence ſtriking over into *Sicily*, where having notice of the rebellion in *Africa*, hee returnes thither, and ſpeeds well. Then at length marching into *Italy*, takes *Naples*, ſacks it, overthrowes the *Gothes*, whoſe King *Theodatus* then was. After this, hee repaires to *Rome*, where hee was kindly and honourably entertained by all, removing from thence, takes in the townes and forts every where, and amongſt the reſt, *Peronſa*: after this, he beſieges *Ravenna*, where *Vitigis*, King of the *Gothes* giving him battle loſeth his Army, is taken priſoner, and carried away by *Beliſarius* to *Conſtantinople*.

The *Gothes* renewing their Forces in the countrey beyond

Po,

Po, elect *Hildebrand* their king. To him, two succeeded, and after them *Totilas*. He in *Belisarius* his absence, ouer-running all *Italy*, takes *Rome*, after a siege, sackes and sets fire on it. *Belisarius* hereupon recalled, having finished the war against the *Parthians*, who againe forraged *Syria*, returnes into *Italy*, and recovers the Citie in a manner left desolate: and then incountering with the Enemy, had a happy battle: but sayling into *Sicily* for provision, is called backe by *Iustinianus*, which affoorded occasion to *Totilas*, to renew his forces, and returne to *Rome*. The Emperour forthwith ordaines *Narses* the Eunuch, Generall in the *Italian* warre: hee expelled the *Gothes* quite out of *Italy*, which was so much the easilier effected, they having lost their King *Totilas*, who dyed of a wound. That warre

warre with the *Gothes*, lasted eighteene yeares. And *Iustinianus* thus recovering *Italy*, and *Africke*, after hee had assumed his Grandchild by his daughter, for his Colleague in the Empire, departed this life. Some writ, that hee was a Prince of a dull nature, and overswayed by his wife *Theodora*. *Tribonianus* the Lawyer was in high esteeme with him, he who (abrogating the writings and disputations of the Ancients) gathered out of them an hodchpotch of the lawes, and left us the fragments only, which now goe under the name of the *Pandects*: But he had certaine helpers in that worke, whose names are mentioned all over. Hee did the like also in the references and lawes of the Emperours, which being comprehended in three bookes, the *Gregorian*, *Hermogenians* and

and *Theodoſian*: he contracted into one volume, naming it *Inſtinians Code*, uſing other mens helpes therein, whoſe names the Emperour reckons up in the preface to his booke. There are Authors that report, how this *Tribonianus* was a covetous man, and for *gaine*, (as the Poet ſaith) made and marred lawes. In the *Code* before mentioned, there are many of *Iuſtinians* Lawes, which contradict the former. There was added alſo, a peculiar worke, of new conſtitutions, which throughout, beare the name and title of *Inſtinian*.

Virgil. 6. Ænead.

The Emperour intreated *Beliſarius*, whom I ſpoke of, (him by whoſe proweſſe hee had obtained ſo many and ſo glorious victories) moſt ignominiouſly: and in his extreme old age, cauſed his eyes to bee put out. In his raigne, ſome Councels were aſſembled

bled at *Conſtantinople*, wherein *Menna* Patriarke of that Citie, ſate Preſident: who, as their bookes have it, is ſtiled the moſt holy, moſt bleſſed, and Oecumenicall. In the beginning of the Code, an Epiſtle of the Emperour to the Archbiſhop of the City of *Rome*, is ſet downe, wherein hee cals him, the Head of all Churches, and ſubjects all to him. Furthermore, although the Learned are of opinion, that it was forged, yet grant it be true, it is certaine that this controverſie continued many yeares after, till at length the Biſhops of *Rome*, amplified with abilities, prevailed: and in the poſſeſſion of the Church would erect to themſelves a Tower, which, whether reared by the hands of men, or favour of Princes, now carries the name, as though it were founded by power divine. We have

have formerly mentioned how the ſixth Councell of *Carthage* was held in S. *Auſtines* time, wherein Pope *Boniface* the firſt, and Pope *Caleſtines* fallacies were unmaſked, when they alleged how it was decreed at *Nice*, that all Provinces ſhould appeale to them. And in *Juſtinians* time, *Boniface* the ſecond was Biſhop of *Rome*, whoſe Epiſtle is extant, wherein he ſharply reprehends *Aurelius* Biſhop of *Carthage* in the before-mentioned Councell, and ſayes, that hee with his fellowes, did by the devils inſtigation reſiſt the Church of *Rome*, as alſo gives God thankes, that in his time, *Eulalius*, *Aurelius* his ſucceſſour, was reconciled to the Church of *Rome*, and after that, rehearſes the words of *Eulalius*, wherein he profeſſes, that hee condemnes both his predeceſſours and ſucceſſours, what

whatſoever they bee, that goe about to weaken the priviledges of the holy and Apoſtolicall Church of *Rome*.

Agapetus the next to *Boniface*, removed *Anthemias* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* out of his place, for denying the two natures in Chriſt. *Theodora* the Empreſſe, tooke this very hainouſly, and by *Beliſarius*, admoniſhed *Silvirius Agapetus* his ſucceſſors, to reſtore him: and *Beliſarius* (certaine other accuſations alſo being layd to his charge) turnes him out of his place, and ſends him into baniſhment, ſubſtituting *Virgilius*, who likewiſe called to *Conſtantinople*, and refuſing to recall *Anthemius*, was condemned to the like puniſhment: whereby it ſufficiently appeares in what manner the Biſhops of *Rome* were then ſubject to the power of the Emperours.

Juſtino

Iustine the II. being Emperour, the *Persian* war was renued, which miscarrying, *Archelaus* the Emperours Lievtenant of a new concludes a peace. *Iustin.* II. 565. *an.* 10. *m.* 10. *d.* 20.

Narses the Emperours Lieutenant throughout *Italy*, (after the *Gothes* were expulst, and *Totilas* dead) held *Italy*, almost sixteene yeares: afterwards called home by the Emperour, from whom receiving certaine unwelcome letters, and therein perceiving his ingratitude, hee not onely stayes still, but further for revenge, (sending away his Ambassidours) instigates the *Lombards* then seated in *Pannonia*, proffering them very large rewards, to depart from *Pannonia*, and come into *Italy*, the most pleasant and fruitfull of all Countries. Thereupon they tooke that part of *Italy*, which till this day, retaines the name from them. This *Iustine* as it

it is written, constituted an Exarch Governour throughout *Italy*: hee was as it were the Emperours Vicar or Deputy, his chiefe seat was at *Ravenna*, neglecting *Rome*, and in each City and Towne ordaining some Governour. The *Italian* writers report that this new ordinance was the bane of *Italy* and *Rome*, *Narses* soone after dyed at *Rome*.

Tiberius II. 576 an 6. m. 20. d. 8.

Tiberius not long before adopted and made Collegue in the Empire, was *Iustines* successor. He got two happy victories against the *Persians*: and established a peace with the *Lombards*, whose Kingdome then reached from the *Samnites* unto the *Alpes*, the City of *Rome* onely excepted, which after they had for a space sharply besieged, at length (constrained by force of tempest and raine) raised their siege.

Mauritius 583. an. 19. m. 3. d. 11.

Mauritius Tiberius his sonne

ſonne in Law, being created Emperor, in ſome certaine battels by his Lievtenants, overthrew the *Perſians*, and at length concluded a peace with them: recalling his Army, hee expelled the *Scythians* out of *Myſia*, repreſſed the *Lombards* throughout *Italy*: chaſed the *Hunnes* out of *Pannonia*: but being hated of the Souldiers for his covetonſneſſe, was enforced (upon a mutinie ariſen) to fly to *Chalcedon*, and there at length was ſlain, together with his wife, children, and whole race, by *Phocas* the Centurion, who afterwards through ſedition, was proclaimed Emperor.

Phocas. 603. *an.* 8. *m.* 4. *d* 9.

It is written that in *Mauritius* his raigne, a Comet appeared for ſixe monthes ſpace, and then alſo was *Mahomet* borne, whom we will ſpeake of hereafter.

At this time, *Iohn* Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, ſtiled himſelfe the

the universall Patriarch: but *Pelagius* the second, Bishop of *Rome*, vehemently resisted him, and pronounced his Decrees voyd. His successor *Gregory* the first sharply reprehends him for this, and indeed confesses, that in the Councell of *Chalcedon*, this title and honour was given to his predecessours, but none of them used it. As also he exhorts *Mauritius* the Emperour by his Letters, to restraine him, for that also appertained to his authority, which hee (in arrogating such a kind of power) did much impaire. It is recorded, that the next after *Gregory*, *Boniface* the III. obtained the primacie from *Phocas*, certaine Edicts and charters being published in that behalfe.

In *Phocas* his raigne the *Persians* very grievously annoyed the Common-wealth: seizing upon *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*

ria, and marching on even unto the lesser *Asia*, such was the negligence of this Prince. *Germany* also, together with *Gallia*, and a great part of *Italy* revolted. The *Sarazens* wasted *Ægypt*: and hee himselfe being slaine for his cruelty and neglect of the Commonwealth, *Heraclius* succeeded. Then againe the *Persians* marching on very farre through *Ægypt*, invade *Africa*, which they bring under their subjection. The *Scythians* diversly dismember *Europe*. *Heraclius* at length marching into *Asia*, when hee could not make his peace, though propounding certaine conditions, little tending to the honour of the *Romanes*, almost by meere constraint encountred with the *Persians*, (who now also forraged *Iudea*) and in a battell or two discomfited them. Then marching on beyond the River

ver *Tigris*, and ranſaking *Perſia* farre and wide (entring at length into amity with *Sirochus* the [a] King of *Perſia's* Son, who having ſlaine his father, ſet upon the Kingdome) recovered *Affrica*, and *Ægypt*, and whatſoever elſe the *Perſians* had taken, and it was covenanted that the River *Tygris* ſhould divide the *Perſian* and *Romane* domininions. At this time alſo the *Sarazens* ſerving in the warre under *Heraclius*, being defrauded of their pay, revolt in huge troopes, and pillaging up and downe *Syria*, (*Mahomet* being their Chiefetaine) took *Damaſcus*, forraged *Ægypt*, ſubdued *Arabia*, and gave the *Perſians* ſome overthrowes. This *Mahomet* was by parentage obſcure, but ſubtill and adventurous, as alſo afterwards enriched by mariage: and by reaſon of his prompt wit carrying great ſway

[a] *Coſroes.*

ſway, he propounds a new kind of doctrine (to reaſon indeed very delectable, but for the moſt part ridiculous and fooliſh) whereby he might more and more oblige the minds of men, and more firmely poſſeſſe himſelfe with ſoveraignty.

And though this flame might at firſt have eaſilie beene quenched, yet being neglected, in ſhort ſpace grew to a maine height: and ſo from that time the Majeſty and Empire of the *Romanes* in the Eaſt, decayed more and more, Nations revolting one after another.

In *Heraclius* his raigne, the fourth Councell of *Toledo* was celebrated, where, becauſe moſt part of the Prieſts throughout *Spaine*, did not every day (but onely upon that day which wee call Sunday) uſe that prayer which Chriſt himſelfe taught us: amongſt other matters, a reformation there-

therein was decreed, as alſo that the *Apocalyps* of S. *Iohn*, as they ſay, ſhould be read in the Church from Eaſter to Whitſontide.

The *Gothes* then raigned in *Hiſpain*, when as the *Spaniards* (growne weary, as it is common, of forraigne government) attempting an innovation, this Councell under a ſevere penalty prohibited the practizing of any conſpiracie againſt their King of the *Gothiſh* Nation: and that after the Kings deceaſe, the States and Clergie of the whole Nation, ſhould by common conſent appoint the ſucceſſor. The ſame decree was alſo renued in ſome other of their aſſemblies. The ſinging of the Hebrew *Alleluiah* in the Church, in time of *Lent* was likewiſe forbidden, for that it was a time of ſorrow and not of rejoycing. To *Heraclius*, *Conſtance* ſucceeded, who

Conſtantine the III. raigned 2 moneths, and *Heraclius* two yeares.

Conſtance the II. 6. 2. an. 27. m. 8. d. 10.

who was his grand-child by his sonne *Constantine*. He had an infortunate sea-fight with the *Sarazens*, who getting the victory, tooke *Rhodes*, and without doubt had proceeded further, had not the factions kindled amongst them, procured a two yeares truce with the *Romanes*. The Emperour having this time to pause, marches with an Army into *Italy*, thereby as he boasted, to rescue it out of the Enemies hands: and arriving at *Tarento*, besieged *Luceria*, and other places of *Apulia* belonging to the *Lombards*: but in his journey toward *Naples*, his Rereguard was cut off by the *Lombards*. Entring *Rome* peaceably, at length he disorbes the Citie of all its ornaments, and there staying a few dayes strocke over into *Sicily*, where afterwards hee was murthered in a Bath: and some dissension

ariſing after his death about ſucceſſion, the *Saracens* (laying hold on this opportunity) with a great Navie invaded *Sicily*, commit a horrible maſſacre of the Iſlanders, take *Syracuſe*, and carry away with them all *Conſtans* his ſpoyles taken from *Rome*. To *Conſtans Conſtantine* the IIII ſucceeded, commonly called the *Bearded*. He for certaine yeares encountring with the *Sarazens*, at length vanquiſht them, inſomuch as they ſued for peace, and for a thirty yeares Truce: as alſo condeſcended to pay a yearely Tribute: and the *Romanes* Enemies in the Eaſt herewith ſhaken, implore a peace. But the *Bulgars* tranſpaſſing their bounds waſte *Thrace*, with them a peace was at length concluded, and both the [b] *Myſia's* yeelded up to them but afterwards (when they perceived the *Romanes* negli-

Conſtantine the IIII, or *Bearded*, 669. an. 16. d. 7.

[b] Now *Burſia* in *Aſia*.

negligence) breaking the league, fly out againe, and extenuate the forces of the Empire. This Emperour as it is recorded, was the first, that ordained, that whom the Clergy and people of *Rome* together with the souldiers, had created Bishop of that Citie, he should obtaine full power: for till this time the dignity of Bishop of *Rome* depended upon the confirmation, either of the Emperour, or of his Deputy for *Italy*. There is a long Epistle extant of Pope *Leo* the II, to *Constantine*, wherein hee condemnes all manner of Heretikes, and highly extols him for his love to, and protection of Religion, as also for his liberality and munificence: adding, that the Church having gotten such a Defender, most joyfully triumphed.

The first Counc l at *Constantinople* 680.

The sixth Counceil at *Constantinople* was held in his raign

which consisted of 150 Bishops: Wherein, about the end thereof, mention is made (but in obscure words) of those Canons stiled the Apostles. But *Gracianus* reckons up the contrary opinions; for hee avers, that there be those that can affirme, that they were compiled by Heretikes, rejected by the Primitive Church, and accounted among the *Apochrypha's*. Yet it is written that *Zepherinus* B. of *Rome*, in order the sixteenth, approved them: as also, after him, this Councell before mentioned, which (as they report) was ended in *Iustine* the I I. his time, *Constantine* the IIII. his sonne. In briefe, all flotes upon incertaine grounds, neither doe they agree in the number of the Canons, for some hold 50. others 60. others 84. in which number indeed they are extant. Whereby

by it may eaſily be conjectured that more were added by degrees, and afterwards (though proceeding from many) comprehended under one title. It is written that then alſo the Archbiſhop of *Ravenna*, ſubjected himſelfe to the Biſhop of *Rome*, who before that (but moſt eſpecially after the tranſlation thither of the Exarchy) would yeeld nothing at all to him.

Iuſtinian, II 686. *an.* 10.

To *Conſtantine*, *Iuſtinianus* his ſon ſucceeded; he by reaſon of his nonage and inexperience, miſgoverned the Common-wealth, and breaking the league which his Father had made with the *Sarazens*, and *Bulgars*, was brought to that pinch as hee himſelfe was conſtrained to ſue for peace to both of them. At length, being thruſt out for his cruelty, and baniſht with his noſe cut off, *Leontius* ſucceeded, having

Leontius, 696. *an.* 23.

beene prisoner two yeares upon suspition of affecting the Empire. In the time of those broiles, the *Sarazens* inuade *Africa*, but were within two yeares after chased out thence by force of Armes. The *Roman* Souldiers forsaking the Garrison in *Africa*, sith the Emperour sleighted over all affaires with negligence and carelessenesse, and fearing lest they should againe bee expelled by the *Sarazens*, who were then exceeding strong; create one *Tiberius* Emperour. Hee marches with his forces to *Constantinople*, where winning the Citie, takes *Leontius*, cuts off his nose, cast him into prison, and constitutes a new Exarchy in *Italy*. And whilst all matters were carried, after this boisterous manner, the *Sarazens* laying hold on this fit opportunity, march out of *Egypt*, with an huge Army: and againe surprise

Tiberius Apsimatus 906. an. 7.

prise *Africa* and *Lybia*, and welnigh all *Hispaine*.

Iustinianus (hee whom I above spoke of, expeld and banisht by *Leontius* (by helpe of *Tribellius* King of *Bulgaria*, at length takes *Constantinople*, and therein *Leontius*, and *Tiberius*, whome he put to death: after which hee raigned sixe yeares cruelly, proving also ingratefull to King *Tribellius*, and at length joyning battle with *Philippicus Bardanes*, to whom the Souldiers had revolted, both he and his sonne *Tiberius* were there slaine. Pope *Constantine* pronounced this *Philippicus* (for difference in Religion) a Schismaticke, whose eyes being afterwards pluckt out by his own servants, *Anastatius* the I I was his successor.

Iustinian the II, againe 706. *An.* 6.

c First causing them to be carried up and downe the citie bound in cords, then trampling upon their necks, and lastly beheading them.

Philippicus Bardanes, 712. *an.* 2. *m* 9. *d* 7.

Anastatius, the II. 715. *an.* 1. *m* 3.

Hee sent a strong Navie to the *Rhodes* to make warre with the *Sarazens*, constitu-

eing an Eccleſiaſticall perſon Generall thereof: whom the Souldiers refuſing to obey, a mutinie aroſe, and one *Theodoſius* of obſcure parentage was created Empe[illegible]our, who changing the voyage, marches to *Conſtantinople*, takes the Citie, and confines *Anaſtatius* (who hee overthrew in battaile) to a Monaſtery: but not long after being expulſt by *Loo* Lieutenant of his forces, hee alſo betakes himſelfe to a Monaſticall life. About this time which was in the yeare of Grace 717. the *Moores* with their whole powers breake into *Spaine*, and ſubdue it. *Roderick* being then King of the *Hiſpaines*, whom the *Gothes* had elected. The *Sarazens* in *Leois* raigne, having over-runne *Thrace*, beſieged *Conſtantinople*, both by ſea and land for three yeares ſpace; but at length (being well nigh deſtroyed by the plague

Theodoſius Adramittonus, 746. m.7. d.16.

Loo Comon. 717. an. 24. m.2. d.25.

plague) were constrained to retire home. This *Leo* was a mortall adversary to *Gregory* the II. Bishop of *Rome*: and charged his Vicar or Exarch in *Italy*, by all meanes to cut him off: but the *Lombards* defended the Pope, not for any love they bare him, but to the end, that by these dissentions, they might enlarge their owne Teritories. For upon this occasion they surprised many townes belonging to the Exarchy. Certaine of this *Gregories* Epistles to the Clergy and Laity of *Thuringia*, are extant, wherein hee admonishes them more and more to encrease in the knowledge of God: as also to the *Saxons*, sharpely deterring them from worshipping of Idols, in which employment hee used one[e] *Boniface* his helpe, whom hee had sent into *Germany*.

A part of *Saxony*, where the Citie *Erford* stands.

e An Englishman borne in *Devonshire*

The Emperour *Leo* throwes

all ſtatues and Images of Saints out of Churches, and enjoynes the Pope alſo to doe the like: but hee not onely diſobeyes, but alſo denounces ſharpe puniſhment againſt him perſevering in his purpoſe. To *Leo*, his ſon *Conſtantine* of that name the V. ſucceeded, ſurnamed *Copronymos*, of the ſame Religion with his father. Hee ſetting forth with a great Navie againſt the *Sarazens*, for recovery of *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, underſtanding by a meſſenger of the inſurrections hatched at home, and of *Artabaſtus* the new elected Emperour, retires to *Conſtantinople*, takes the Citie by force, and puts out *Artabaſtus* his eyes. Hee alſo, as his Father *Leo*, lived in vehement diſcord with *Gregory* the III. Biſhop of *Rome*, who forthwith ſending his *Nuntio's*, excommunicates him: and they being caſt in priſon, he

Conſtantine the V. 741. an 9. m. 1. 27.

hee made a Decree in the Councell thereupon assembled: That whosoever should hereafter demolish the Images of Saints, or contumeliously abuse them, should bee utterly excluded from the Communion of the Church: after this with all diligence and endeavour hee erected Images in divers Churches, and as farre as he could, sumptuously adorned them.

After *Gregory* the III *Zacharias* succeeded. An Epistle of his is extant to one *Boniface* a Bishop in *Germany*; the same man, as it appeares, whose helpe *Gregory* the II used, as a little above mentioned. *Zacharias* satisfied his requests, and permitted Bishoprickes at *Merburgh*, *Bamberg*, and *Erphord*, and also gave him leave to goe to *Charlemaine*, *Charles Martel* his sonne, who was desirous to have a Councell held in

in ſome Citie of the *French* Kingdome: and that he might diligently reforme the abuſes of the Church, but moſt eſpecially remove adulterers, and thoſe that had many wives from the order of Prieſthood: for ſithence after the undertaking of the holy Miniſtery, they ought not to have or touch ſo much as one wife, much leſſe as one and the ſame time, they ſhould have more. for *Pauls* words, that the Biſhop ſhould bee the husband of one wife, is to bee underſtood not of the time preſent, but paſt; to wit, that he who deſires to bee admitted into the Miniſteriall function, ſhould have no more wives then one.

To this Epiſtle *Charlemaines* Edict (who ſtiles himſelfe Duke of the *French*) is annexed: wherein hee ordaines that a Councell ſhould be held every yeare in his preſence: and

and commands that adulterous Prieſts and Whoremongers ſhould be removed out of their places: and likewiſe prohibits them from hunting and hawking, and charges them not to maintaine any whore at home: but concerning wives not a word.

From this time *Aiſulphus* King of the *Lombards* required a tribute from the *Romans*, ſharply menacing them in caſe of *Non*-payment. *Stephen* the II. of that name, then Biſhop of *Rome*, ſeeing hee could not ſtop his mouth, neither with flatteries nor rewards, ſues to *Conſtantine* the Emperour for ayde, but no helpe comming from him, hee ſolicites *Pipin*, lately (as we below ſhall mention) made King of the *French*, to lend him his hand. He marching with an army into *Italy* beſieges *Pavie*, and compels *Aiſtulphus* to come to compoſition

sition, but the enemie, after *Pipins* returne home, growne more kene, againe takes armes: whereupon *Pipin* againe solicited, marches into *Italy*; then at length *Aistulphus* surrenders the Exarchy to *Pipin*, in which Country those Cities are of chiefe account, *Ravenna*, *Faventia*, *Cæsena*, *Forli*, *Forlimpopoli*, *Bologna*, *Reggio*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*.

It is written that *Pipin* delivered all this Countrey into the Popes hands, though the Emperour first required him to restore them to him, as belonging to the Empire, not to the Church of *Rome*.

Leo the IV. 775 an 4. m.d.26.

To *Constantine*, his Son *Leo* the IV. succeeded: Hee undertooke one onely expedition into [f] *Syria*, where discomfited he retires home, and not long after dyed, of the same religion with his Father, leaving behind him his Son *Constantine*

[f] Against the *Saracens*.

the

the VI. who by reaſon of his nonage, not of ability to raigne, his mother *Irene* governed the Common-wealth, but hee waxen warmer in 8 years, depoſing his mother, tooke the Empire upon himſelfe, with no leſſe inſolencie than cruelty: whereupon certaine conſpiracies being practiſed againſt him, hee ſet a mulct amongſt others, upon his unckle *Nicephorus*, and put out his eyes. And at length he himſelfe by the meanes of his mother, was ſerved with the ſame ſauce, within a while after dying of griefe, and thereupon the ſway of government returned into her hands, who afterwards in the fourth yeare of her Empire was depoſed and ſent into exile, *Nicephorus* whom we before mentioned, was her ſucceſſor.

g 20. yeares of age.

Irene the Empreſſe. 797. an. 4.

In the meane time whileſt matters were thus tumultuouſly

ly carryed at *Constantinople*, the name of *Charles* King of the *French*, grew famous. For hee having finiſhed the warre in *Aquatanie*, at the requeſt of *Adrian* Biſhop of *Rome*, marches into *Italy*, and as his Father *Pipin* repreſſed *Aiſtulphus* King of the *Lombards*, as above ſayd, ſo hee, after a long ſiege tooke *Deſiderius*, *Aiſtulphus* his ſucceſſor, a heavie foe to *Italy*, and *Adrian* the I. As alſo excluded his Sonne *Adalgiſius* out of the Kingdome, and chaſed him quite out of *Italie*. For the Emperours of *Rome*, by reaſon of their farre remote abſence (I meane at *Conſtantinople*) ever ſince *Conſtantine* the great, and being likewiſe hindered, not onely with forraigne wars, but alſo with civill and domeſticall diſſeations, in a manner neglected *Italy*, or at leaſtwiſe could not conveniently protect it, eſpecially

the

the *Lombards* raigning there: Furthermore, moſt of them alſo, being at deadly diſſention with the Biſhops of *Rome*, as we have formerly ſpecified, out of their hatred towards them, were not moved at this proſperous eſtate of the *Lombards*. For this cauſe the Pope provided forraigne defence, and becauſe no houſe was in thoſe times of more renowne and puiſſance than that of the *French* Kings, in regard of the greatneſſe of their noble exployts, to them they flye, as to a harbour in time of trouble. And after this manner, *Adrian* dying, *Leo* the third, who ſucceeded him, having many adverſaries at *Rome*, ſued to *Charles*, *Pipins* Son: who at his fourth acceſſion to the City, was by the Pope and all the people proclaimed Emperour, which happened, that the ſame time, when nought but factions

Charles the Great, 801. *an.* 13. *m.* 1. *d.* 4.

ons ſwarmed at *Conſtantinople*, inſomuch as the very time it ſelfe, and ſtate of the Common-wealth, ſeemed to adminiſter the cauſe and occaſion of this change.

Thus therefore the Empire of the Weſt, came to the *Germans*: for without all doubt, *Pipin* and *Charles* were *Germanes*. This was in the eight hundred and firſt yeare after Chriſts birth.

Nicephorus was overcome and ſlaine by the *Bulgars*, and his ſcul made a drinking boule by *Crumnus* King of the *Bulgars*.

Now, after *Nicephorus*, the Emperours of the Eaſt were toſſed with concinuall wars, for at firſt the *Bulgars* often incountred them, then the *Sarazens* iſſuing out of *Africa*, tooke the Ile of *Candie*, as afterwards *Sicilie*, and made havocke in *Aſia* farre and wide: and laſt of all, the *Turks*, a people of *Scythia*.

The Emperours of *Greece*, from *Nicephorus* to *Conſtantine*, *Palaologus* the laſt, are reckoned

ned to 50. ſome whereof were women, but moſt of thoſe were ſloathfull. And in *Conſtantine Monomachus* his raigne, the *Turkes* from a baſe originall, by degrees getting ground more and more, began to waſt *Aſia*, and daily increaſing their power, at length made up a Monarchy, but no new or fifth one, but ſprouted out of that part of the *Romane* Empire, lying in the Eaſt. Of which Monarchy, *Ottoman* was the head, about the yeare of Chriſt, 1300.

Ottoman, firſt Monarch of the *Turks*. an. 1300.

Afterwards, *Mahomet* of that name the ſecond, great Grand-father to *Soljman*, who now ſwayes the Empire, taking *Conſtantinople*, & putting *Conſtantine Palæologus* the Emperour before mentioned, together with his whole family, to the ſword, utterly extinguiſh the name, and ſucceſſion of Emperours of our Religion,

gion, in thoſe parts. And the *Turkes* to this day hold *Aſia Syria*, *Ægypt*, *Meſopotamia*, *Iudea*, the *Rhodes*, all *Greece*, *Thracia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia*, *Illyricum*, both the *Myſians*, and of late, almoſt the other part of *Hungary*, and ſome part of *Africa*.

In former times, the Churches of *Ieruſalem*, *Antioch*, *Conſtantinople* and *Rome*, contended amongſt themſelves for primacie, but eſpecially the two laſt, as wee formerly ſhewed, but the *Turke* ended that controverſie, and ſet ſuch a confuſion in thoſe [h] three places, that there is not a tract remaining of a Church or Chriſtian Congregation: and the matter it ſelfe ſhewes, of what colour the face, and what is the ſtate of that [i] Church now remaining, which now (thoſe * rivals or eye-ſores being removed) alone triumphs.

Therefore

h *Hierus, Antioch, Conſtantinople.*

i *Rome.*

* *Æmulis.*

Therfore having ſhowne after what manner the other part of the Romane Empires body, lying in the Eaſt, utterly decaied and fell into the hands of ſtrangers: it remaines that wee ſhould alſo briefly unfold, how that part in the Weſt, quite periſhed, and found new Lords. But here by the way, let us conſider, after what a wonderfull kind of mockery of fortune that majeſticall glory, and ſublimity of the Empire, was from thoſe *Romanes* and ancient families brought into the hands of ſtrangers, and ſome of them of baſe degrees, ſome being *Spaniards*, others originally of *Pannonia*, *Dacia*, *Dardania*, *Dalmatia*, *Gallia*, *Thrace*, *Cappadocia*.

But chiefly it is worth obſervance, how doubtfull and miſerable the eſtate of theſe Emperours was: for their dignity and ſafety conſiſted not in

in the power of the Senate, or people, but of the Legions and Souldiers: ſo that it may ſtand for a great wonder, that any would undertake this charge ſo dangerous and obvious to injuries: For from *Caius Caſar*, (who was murthered in the face of the Senate) till *Charles* the Great, about thirty of them were ſlaine, foure whereof killed themſelves, alwayes ſomething was wanting in them, which the Souldiers deſired; who could abide the good no more than the wicked: but upon the leaſt occaſion, raiſing a tumult, cut off thoſe, whom ſometimes they had drawne up to that height of honour againſt their wills. as for example, it was *Ælius Pertinax* his caſe. The Senate ſtood in feare of the Emperour, but the Emperour himſelfe was ſwayed by the will, and in a manner, the

the becke of the raſcall Souldiers. And this preſumption they tooke upon them after *Cains Caſars* death, eſpecially thoſe veterane bands, which hee had imployed in *Gallia*, *Hiſpaine*, and *Africa*.

Hereupon *Cicero* deploring this: Couragious they are indeed, ſaith hee, but in regard of the memory of thoſe exployts, which they atchieved for the liberty of the *Romanes*, and the dignity of the Common-wealth too fierce, and recall all our Councell to their violence.

The end of the ſecond Booke.

IOHN SLEIDAN of the foure chiefe Monarchies.

OR,

The Key of Hiſtory.

The third Booke.

BEfore wee ſpeake of *Charles* the great, (to whom I told you the Empire of the Weſt was befallen) ſomething muſt be unfolded concerning the *Germanes*, from whom hee derives his originall. And firſt of

of all it is manifeſt, beyond all doubt, that the *Germanes* very oft paſſed over the *Rhyne*, and entred the *Gallea's* there to ſeat themſelves in regard of the goodneſſe of the ſoile. For the *Teuthons* broke into the Province of *Gallia*, and were put to flight by *Caius Marius* the Conſull. Afterwards the *Aruernes* and *Hednies* quarrelliug about Principalitie, the *Germanes* (hired with pay from the *Arvernes* and *Sequanes*) marched thither at firſt indeed but with indifferent forces, but increaſing by degrees, in *Arcoviſtus* their Kings raigne, poſſeſſed a good part of the countrey: but them *Caius Caſar* overthrew in battle: and ſome yeares after, when hee made warre againſt the k *Eburons*, a people of *Gallia Belgica*, the *Germanes* againe march over the *Rhyne*, with intent to beat backe the

k Inhabiting *Luke* beyond *Brabant.*

Roman Armie, but were by him diſcomfited, at the meeting of the River *Maze* and the *Rhyne*. Many yeares following, they contained themſelves within their owne bounds, becauſe the *Roman* Emperours held them in play by warres: yet as oft as they could lay hold on fitting opportunity, ſlackt not their owne commodity, but continually waſted *Gallia*. After this manner, *Gallienus* being Emperour, one no leſſe careleſſe then voluptuous, they madè an Inroad, and by little and little, ſprung up to that potencie, that the Emperour *Probus* had much a doe to repell them. *Iulianus* alſo, *Conſtantius* his Lieutenant, made warre againſt them afterwards, when *Honorius* was Emperour, the *Gothes* broke into *Gallia*, to whom the Emperour (detained by ſundry warres)

warres) granted the Countrey of *Aquitania* to inhabite, on the other ſide, the [l] *French-Germance*, making their way through [m] *Belgia*, vanquiſhing the [n] *Trevires*, [o] *Menapians*, *Eburons* [p] *Morines* [q] *Nervians*, [r] *Amtians*, (*Bellovacans*, *Soiſſons*, ſeated themſelves in that part of *Gallia*, which retaines their name, and is called *France*: in which Countrey, *Paris* is the chiefe Citie, and not farre from thence ſtands *San-Denis*, afterwards conſecrated for the Sepulture of the Kings of *France* to this day. After this manner inlarged, having fomerly poſſeſſion of a good part of *Germany*, even all the Countrey betwixt the River *Maine*, and the *Rhyne*: they eaſily repelled not only offered hoſtility, but alſo made warre upon others. Beſides, the *Roman* Empire in *Aſia* and *Affrica*, daily more and

l Of *Frankenlandt*, then *Franconia* in *Germany*.
m *Holland*.
n In and about *Treers*.
o Of *Iuliers* or *Gulicke*.
p Part in *Flanders*, part in *Picardie*.
q Of *Turnay*.
r *Part of Picardy*.
The beginning of the *French* Kingdome about 421.

and more ſliding away, and the *Lombards* waſting *Italy*, they almoſt extended their Dominions quite through *Gallia*: and after many of their Kings had raigned there in ſucceſſive courſe, at length the Crowne came to *Pipin* alſo, and to his ſonne *Charles*. *Charles Martel Pipins* Father, who was not King himſelfe, but onely one of the Nobles, and Governour of the Pallace, or as they are commonly called, *Majors* of the houſe: vanquiſhed the *Bavarians*, and *Suevians*. For as the writers of the *French* Annals deliver it, the Kings there, for ſome years together, had nothing at all beſides their title, the principalitie of government belonging to the Governour of the Kings houſe. For thoſe Kings degenerated from the worth of their Predeceſſors, and gave themſelves over to pleaſure, reje-

rejecting the care of the Common-wealth: whereupon the Governour of the Pallace bore all sway, and by how much greater the Kings negligence was, so much more hee augmented his Authority. At length upon this occasion, *Pipin* who was Governour in *Childrickes* raigne (when the cause, as they say, came to canvasing before Pope *Zachary*) got the Kingdome. Hereof is mention made in that Decree which they name *Gratians*, to wit, that it is lawfull for the Pope to deprive Kings of their Priacipalitie: but the title and inscription of that place is false, seeing there were two *Anastatio's* Emperours, and it cannot be referred to either of them; for the former raigned above 200. and the other 37. yeares, before this hapned: as also there was no Pope *Gelasius* in the later Emperors time

I thought good to adde this for the Readers advertiſement, that they may wiſely and warily peruſe the Papall records: for it is not one place alone which diſcovers this to bee their prime practice, ſo to faſten an opinion of antiquity upon their lawes, that they may carry the more weight and authority.

Pipin (beſides his repreſſion of the *Lombards* in *Italy*, at the Popes requeſt, as before mentioned) commenced war alſo againſt the *Saxons*, and afterwards againſt the *Aquitanians*, whoſe Chieftaine hee tooke and put to death: not long after, departing his life, they forthwith rebelled, and King *Charles* his ſonne with much difficulty and infinite toile, at length made an end of that double warre. For he was in Armes againſt the *Saxons*, full thirty three yeares, during which

which warre, hee made other alſo: *Bavaria* likewiſe with their Chiefetaine *Taſſiſo*, hee brought under his ſubjection, and in two expeditions againſt the *Lombards*, marching into *Campania*, ſubdued all *Italy*, and ſetled it with lawes; and reduced into ſubjection thoſe Cities of *Gallia*, lying upon the Ocean, which *Caius Cæſar* cals *Armorica*, but now goe under the name of little *Brittaine*, which refuſed any longer to pay yearely tribute to the Kings of *France*. In *Hiſpaine* alſo whither hee made an expedition with an Army againſt the *Saracens*, victory attended him: but in his returne upon the *Pyrene* Mountaines, by a ſtratagem received a ſore overthrow from the [u] *Vaſcones*, a people of *Aquitane*; notwithſtanding at laſt, after eight yeares warre, hee overthrew the *Hunnes*, then

[u] Of *Gaſcoigne.*

in poſſeſſion of *Pannonia*, and likewiſe by his Lieutenants compoſed *Bohemia*. And his laſt warre was againſt the *Danes* or* *Normans*, then with a great Navie forraging the maritine coaſts of *Germany*, and *France*. By the achievement of thoſe ſo famous exploits, hee gained his ſirname the Great. For whereas before him, the *French* Kings only held that part of *Germanie*, lying betwixt *Saxonie*, and the River *Danow*, and betwixt the *Rhyne*, and the River *Sala*, to this hee aded *Suevia*, and *Bavaria*; all *Saxonie*, afterwards both the *Pannonia's*, *Dacia*, *Iſtria*, *Ireland*, and the midland Countrey of *Dalmatia*: whereas alſo the *French* Kings had onely that part of *Gallia*, lying betwixt the *Ryne* and the River *Loire*, betwixt the Ocean and the x *Balearique* Sea: hee added all *Aquitania*, all

* For the *Normans* originally inhabited *Norway*.

x Againſt the Ilands of *Majorque*, and *Minorque*.

all the top of the *Pyrene* mountaines, to the River *Iber*, and (which ſhould have beene named firſt) all *Italy* from the *Alpes* to the furtheſt part of *Calabria*. And this done, he ſets forward to *Rome* the fourth time, where hee was proclaimed Emperour *Auguſtus*, by *Leo* the third, and all the people, after he had raigned thirty three yeares.

Thus the *Romane* Empire in the Weſt, rent almoſt into piece-meales, eſpecially from that time when the Emperours made choice of *Conſtantinople* for their Court and ſeats, (as appeares out of that which we have before mentioned) was by the Emperour *Charles* redintigrated, and as it were a new body, re-aſſumed beauty and feature, after ſo many and ſo great Provinces were reduced into one mans Principality.

Nicephorus the other Emperour in the Eaſt, was much diſpleaſed hereat; but *Charles* by his humanity and kindneſſe, appeaſed him, and interchanging preſents, both of them lived in amity: and the certaine bounds of each Empire was ſet out.

Beſides other aſſemblies, hee had a Councell at *Rhemes*, wherin, amongſt many others, one Decree was, that Biſhops ſhould diligently peruſe the holy Scriptures, and Preach the Word of God. There was a Councell alſo held at *Mentz* the yeare before his death; and others, ſome yeares before, at *Tours*, *Chaalons* and *Arles*, about reformation of the Church, as they deliver it: that lived in thoſe times. Then conſtituting his ſonne *Lewis*, heire of his kingdome, and of the Empire, died at *Aix*, a towne in *Gallia-Belgica*, aged, ſeventy

ſeventy yeares, in the yeare after Chriſts birth, eight hundred and foureteene, after hee had beene Emperour almoſt foureteene yeares, the firſt of any *Germane* advanced to that dignity: In his time, there were onely one and twenty Metropolitane Cities, as they call them, throughout *Italy*, *Germanie*, and *France*: as *Rome*, *Ravenna*, *Millaine*, *Friuly*, *Grado*, *Cullen*, *Mentz*, *Salizburgh*, *Triers*, *Roane*, *Sens*, *Beſanſon*, *Lyons*, *Rhemes*, *Orleans*, *Vienna*, *Monſtier*, *Iuerdun*, *Burdeaux*, *Tours*, and *Burges* in *Berry*.

Pipin his Father committed the *Exarchat*, taken from the *Lombards*, into the Biſhop of *Romes* hands, as above ſaid, which indeed is ſo delivered to memory, and it is reported that hee directly gave it to them, but that very many call into queſtion.

Eginardus one very familiar with

y *Charles.*

with y him, and his ſworne Scribe, writes, that hee more dearely eſteemed of that Church, which they call Saint *Peters* in *Rome*, than any other, and that a great maſſe of gold, ſilver, and jewels, was tranſported thither, and very many gifts ſent from him to the Popes: for herein hee uſed extraordinary diligence, that by his meanes and procurement, the Citie of *Rome* might enjoy her ancient authority, and Saint *Peters* Church might not onely remaine ſafe and ſecured under his patronage, but alſo flouriſh in wealth above other Churches: Thus much onely he writes, but of the donation of ſo many and ſuch potent Cities, within the bounds of the Empire, not a word: nay, it is written, that after his fourth comming into *Italy*, when hee was created Emperour, hee ordered not onely the pub-

publike affaires, but alſo both Eccleſiaſticall and Private concerning the Pope, the City of *Rome*, and all *Italy*. For when hee was not yet Enperour, but onely King of *France*, having vanquiſhed *Deſiderius* King of the *Lombards*, as above ſayd: hee came to *Rome*, and had a Councell, in which (as their booke relates) *Adrian* the firſt, together with the whole Councell, granted him the right and power of electing the Pope, as alſo diſpoſing of the ſea Apoſtolicke, as they tearme it, and confirming Biſhops.

Eginardus attributes to this *Charles*, many virtues worthy of a Prince, as Temperance, Modeſty, Frugality, Love to Religion, Learning, Eloquence, and knowledge, not onely of the Latine, but alſo of the Greeke tongue: withall, his exceeding care and diligence in

in educating and nurturing up his children to the ſame courſe. He alſo, as it is written, founded the Academie of *Paris*, as well of his owne accord, as alſo by the inſtigation of [z] *Albinus* his Tutor for learning of the Arts, as *Eginardus* reports. He alſo gave *German* names to the twelve monthes, and to the windes, which they now uſe, whereas before that time, as the ſame writer relates, the *French* uſed partly Latine, partly barbarous names.

And thus farre in preface-wiſe touching the *Germanes*, and the Emperour *Charles*: henceforward ile briefly runne over, and ſhew after what manner this part of the *Romane* Empire in the Weſt, hard and ſharpe reſtored and recollected by *Charles*, againe decayed, which being divided, fell into many mens dominions,

[z] Commonly called *Alcoinus*, an *Engliſh* man, ſo *Bede* and other.

ons, who held the ſame, as their proper right, not acknowledging the fountaine from whence they flowed: Inſomuch, as that Majeſticall and ſo much renowned ſublimity of the *Romane* Empire, is nothing elſe at this day, then a certaine ſlender ſhadow of a great body, after it was ſhrunk from ſuch an huge maſſe, to *Germany* one particle of *Europe*. Laſt of all, ile briefly explain how *Daniel* foretold this interchangeable courſe of Monarchies, and fall of the *Roman* Empire.

Now *Lewis*, *Charles* his Son, another *Germane* Emperour, renewed amity with *Leo Armenius*, Emperour of *Greece*: aad Pope *Leo* dying in the third yeare of his raigne, his ſucceſſour *Stephen* the IIII comming into *France*, conſecrated a him at *Rhemes*. To this Pope, *Paſchalis* ſucceeded, who

Lewis l. 814 an. 26. m. 14. d. 24.

a Emperor

who, (by reaſon the Emperour interpoſed not his authoritie) diligently and earneſtly excuſing the fact, alleged, that the Papacie was obtruded upon him, altogether againſt his will. The Papall Bookes have it, that this *Lewis* the Emperour, confirmed to this *Paſchalis* and to the reſt after him, both the poſſeſſion of goods, and alſo permitted a free election, that whomſoever all the *Romanes* ſhould judge fit for that dignitie, hee ſhould be accounted Pope. But I ſee not what credence can bee given to ſuch kinde of writings as theſe: for they ſo jarre amongſt themſelves, and are ſo pacht together without all method, that it cannot bee underſtood what ſhould follow.

Lewis had three Sonnes, *Lotharius* whom hee elected Colleague in the Empire and his kingdome: *Charles* (who ſuc-

succeeded his deceased Brother [b] *Pipin*) he set over *Aquitania*: and *Lewis* over *Bavaria*, upon a rebellion raised, hee being taken by his Sonnes, and deposed from his Kingdome, was confined to a Monasticall life at *Compeigne*, a Towne of the *Soissons*. The *French* Annall writers report, that the Ecclesiasticall Prelates (whose hautinesse and riot hee desired to restraine) convocating some assemblies at *Aix*, stirred up those broyles against him, and provokt his Sonnes to put in practise this so impious a fact. But being set at libertie the sixth moneth following, to the great contentment of the people, hee recovered his Kingdome and all more.

[b] In *France*.

The Emperour *Lewis* deposed by his owne sons. *an.* 833

Restored the sixth month following.

Because the place serves, let us by the way take a view of the many Nationall Synods held in *France*; for next after that before mentioned at *Aix*, there

there was another *Troy* in *Champaigne*: after that at *Rhemes*, *Towrs*, *Digion*, *Paris*, *Lyons*, *Vienna*, *Avignion*, *Vierron*, *Orleans*, and many more in the ſame places, for when the affaires of the Commonwealth ſo required, the Kings themſelves convocated as well the States Eccleſiaſticall as others, for reforming of publike enormities. In like manner *Lewis* the twelfth, at bitter enmity with *Iulius* the ſecond, aſſembled a Councell of his owne people at *Towrs*, and *Lyons*, in the yeare of Grace, 1510. and 1511.

Now to the purpoſe, *Lewis* dying, was buryed at *Mentz* and *Lotharius* (then up in Armes againſt his Brothers) ſucceeded: which warre at length quenched, and a new diviſion made, *Germanie* fell to *Lewis*, and part of *France*, from the River *Maze* to the *Rhyne*:

Lotharius 840. *an* 15. *m.* 3. *d.* 10.

to

to *Charles*, *France*, from the *Britiſh Ocean*, and *Pyrene* Mountaines to *Maze*: *Lotharius* (beſides that hee was Emperour) held *Italy*, and the province of *Narbon*.

To him his ſonne *Lewis* the II. ſucceeded, who repreſſed the *Sarazens* breaking into *Italy*. In his raigne amongſt others, *Adrian* the II. was Pope, created (as their bookes have it) contrary to the Emperours aſſent, by the *Romane* Nobility, Citizens, and Clergy, as they call them. For although the Emperours Deputies were in the City, yet were they not called to the Election: who taking it in ill and diſcontented part, received their anſwer, that it was not done in any contempt againſt the Emperour: but in caution for future times, leſt that cuſtome of expecting the Emperours Deputies at the Popes Creation,

Lewis II. 8559 *an.*19. *m.*10.

Creation, ſhould grow up as neceſſary. They report that with this anſwer, they were not onely well pleaſed, but alſo in reverence humbly ſaluted the Pope. Now here we may ſee a certaine wonderfull varietie and inconſtancie in their writings: for if *Lewis* the I. granted them a free election, as they boaſt, and as it is mentioned a little above, why did *Lewis* the II his grand-childe take this for an injury offered him? But howſoever the caſe ſtands, the title of that decree which is in *Gratians Centons*, is evidently falſe, for it is attributed to *Gregory* the IV. whereas hee departed his life, twenty and two yeares before *Adrian* the II. was made Pope. Did he write a Hiſtory when hee was dead of thoſe things which happened afterwards?

Nicholas the I. was the next before

before *Adrian*, A very long Epistle of his to *Michael* Emperour of *Greece*, concerning his power over all Churches, is extant. For *Ignatius* was removed from his Bishoppricke at *Constantinople*, and *Photius* placed, without the Bishop of *Romes* consent: as also the Images were throwne downe. Hee therefore with all the vehemencie hee could exclaimes against this. Many of his decrees also are extant full of Papall Majesty.

Charles King of *France*, as above sayd (notwithstanding his other elder brother *Lewis* the King of *Germanies* resistance) marches in all hast into *Italie*, and is consecrated by *Iohn* the eight Pope of *Rome*. In his second expedition into *Italy*, at the Pope requeſt, for repression of the *Sarazens* who had againe invaded *Campania*: hee dyed at [c] *Mantua*. His Son *Lewis*

Charles the *Bald.* 875. an. 2. m. 2.

c Poysoned by *Zedechias* a Iew.

Lewis the *Stammerer.* 877. *an.* 2. *m.* 6. *d.* 5. *Charles* the *Grosse*, 879. *an.* 8. *m.* 7.

Lewis firnamed the *Stammerer*, was his succeſſour, but hee raigned onely two yeares. After him the government of the Empire came to *Charles* the *Grosse*, Son of *Lewis* King of *Germany*, who (his two brothers being dead) held all *Germany*, *Italy*, and *France*, and chaſed out the *Sarazens*, who infeſted *Italy*: for a while alſo making war againſt the *Normans*, a people of Lower *Germanie*, then annoying *Belgia*: at length granted them that part of *France*, which to this day retaines their name. Next after him *Arnulphus* his Brothers Sonne was Emperour, a worthy Prince. Hee marching into *Italy* to ſet Pope *Formoſus* at liberty from his adverſaries: takes *Rome* and tooke revenge upon the Authours of that ſedition.

The *Normans* firſt comming into *Normandy* in *France*.

Arnulphus 887. *an.* 22. *m.* 1. *d.* 19.

In the time of his raigne, the *Hunnes* being chaſed out of *Scythia*

Scythia, breakes into *Pannonia*, and marching into *Germanie*, (*Lewis* the III. *Arnolphus* his Son being then Emperour) got a notable victory not far from the River *Lech*, and then overran *Bavaria*, *Suevia*, [d] *Francia*, and *Saxony* with bloodſhed robberies and fire.

Arnolphus Emperor, a Councell of two and twenty *Germane* Biſhops, was held at *Triburia* ſometimes a towne upon the banke of the River *Maine*, where amongſt many other, one decree was, That no man ſhould ſell a burying place for the dead, and that no Lay-man, as they call them, ſhould bee buried within the Church.

About this time a mighty uproare burſt forth throughout *Italy*: for *Berengarus* and certaine other Nobles of *Italy*, loaden with multiplicitie of favours from *Charles* the *Bald*, conſpired againſt *France*, at what

b In *Germany* betwixt *Suevia* and *Haſſia*.

what time *Charles* the *Groſſe* raigned: but their attempts there proving fruſtrate, they bend their mindes for *Italy*, which (by long and mutuall conflict, as it is common) they harraze with mercileſſe outrages. At length the victory falling to *Berengarius*, hee got the King!ome of *Italy*, where after hee had taken *Lewis* the Emperonr hee put out his eyes, as Hiſtories relate. About this time alſo, (that no parcell of calamity might be wanting) the *Sarazens*, *Africans*, and *Hungars*, moſt outragiouſly overrunne *Italy*.

Thus whilſt the ſtate of moſt beautifull Religion, under the *Berengarians*, *Hugo*, *Rudolphus*, *Lotharius*, *Albertus*, and certaine others, was ſo dolefull and miſerable, and *Lewis* the Emperour dying in the time of thoſe broyles; the *Germanes* but more eſpecially the *Saxons*,

ons and *Francons*, proclaime *Otho* Prince of the *Saxons*, and *Thuringes* Emperour; but hee, ſtrucken in yeares, perſwades them to take *Conradus* Duke of *Franconia*, who being created Emperour, ordered all affaires according to *Othoes* direction: and ſoone after *Othoes* death, when he himſelfe was very dangerouſly ſicke, calling together his prime Nobility, requeſted them to acknowledge *Othoes* ſon *Henry* then abſent, for Emperour. This was that *Henry* vulgarly called *Henry* the e *Falconer*. Thus, wee ſee after what manner the Imperiall ſplendor and dignity, fell from the *French* and *Charles* the Great his lineage, to the houſe of *Saxony*.

Conrade I. 911. an. 7. m. 6.

Henry the *Falconer*, 919. an. 17.

e Becauſe of his great delight in hawking.

Theſe two Emperours, *Conradus* and *Henry*, were not conſecrated, as they call it, by the Biſhop of *Rome*, and for that

cauſe are left out by many: moreover it is written, that this *Henry* neglected the Popes offered ceremony of conſecration, and that hee ſhould ſay, that hee was content with the acceptance and ſuffrages of good men.

Within a while after this, *Arnolphus* the Evill Duke of *Bavaria*, intended to bring about the ſway of government into his owne hands: whereupon forces being muſtred up on both parts, when both the Armies ſtood in battle ray at *Ratisbon*, the Emperour cals him out to private parley, putting him in mind how hee was created Emperour by the moſt part of the people of *Germany*, and dehorting him from jeoparding the lives of ſo many thouſand men, moſt whereof were innocent and ignorant of the cauſe of that warre: changed his intention, and

and ſo broke off the battle.

In like manner *Burchardus* D. of *Suevia*, rebelled, but (ſhaken with the Emperours puiſſance) came to compoſition.

The *Hungars* againe ſpoile *Saxony*: but after their Chieftaine was taken, make a nine yeares truce. The Emperour after this, trayning up his ſubjects in feats of Armes, vanquiſhed the *Dalmenincians*, takes the Citie of *Prague*, together with *Wenceſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, making that countrey tributary to him. In maine battle hee overthrew the *Hungars* then againe (after the truce ended) breaking into *Saxony*: and diſtributed the tribute which the *Saxons* paid them, amongſt the poore.

Hee intended to have gone to *Rome*, but hindred by ſickneſſe, conſtitutes his elder ſon *Otho* heire of the Empire. Hee commenced wars many yeares

Otho the Great, 936 an. 36. R. 10 d.

Of *Wormbs.*

together against the *Bohemians*, then in rebellion: as also vanquisht and put to flight the *Hungars*, who then also striking over the *Rhyne* in the *Vangions* Countrey, had made an inroad into *Franconia*, with intent to march on from thence and pillage in *Saxony*. Hee brought *Burgundy* under his subjection, and afterward marching with a great Army into *Italy*, and vanquishing the *Berengarians*, there married his second wife *Aditheida*. *Luitholdus* his sonne hereat displeased, practises treachery against him, having Coadjutors every where in readinesse to serve his plots, and amongst the rest *Conradus* Duke of *Suevia* his sisters husband. But his Father besieging him at *Ratisbon*, hee (first brought into distresse) humbly craves and obtaines pardon.

After this the *Hungars*, having

ving forraged *France*, breake into *Germany* in greater multitudes then at any time before, and encampe themselves neere *Ausburge*, on that place, which takes name from the River *Lych*. The Emperour marching thither with the *Saxons*, *Franks*, *Snevians*, *Bavarians*, and *Bohemians*; after a doubtfull and long battel put almost all the enemies forces to the sword, and caused some of their Chieftaines to bee hanged. Then returning into *Saxony* after hee had setled the affaires there, makes a new expedition into *Italy*: but before his journey constituted his sonne *Otho* Collegue in the Empire. At length arriving at *Rome*, hee assembles a Councel, where hee sate President, and deposed Pope *Iohn* the XII. for his offences, in whose place hee appointed *Leo*, of that name the VIII. A decree of his

is extant, inſerted in the Papall Law, where he ſayes, that hee conferres to *Otho* the Emperour and to his ſucceſſors for ever, the authority of chooſing Popes, diſpoſing of the See Apoſtolike, and confirming of Biſhops: as alſo pronounces a moſt ſevere puniſhment againſt thoſe, who (not expecting the Emperours approbation) conſecrate Biſhops. See here another Decree, contrary to ſome other before. After this there is the forme of an oath added, by which (as they report) the Emperour *Otho* bound himſelf to Pope *Iohn*, but it is not added who this Pope *Iohn* was, nor of what number in name, either this *Iohn* or *Otho* were. And ſurely it is wonderfull that matters of ſuch importance and moment, ſhould bee ſo negligently put into writing.

Now if *Otho* the I. tooke this oath, then this objection may

may hold againſt him. That whereas in this forme before-mentioned, among other things hee ſweares not to procure any danger to the Popes life, nor to abrogate his honour and dignity: but how can this appeare, when as he, as wee ſaid before, removed *Iohn* out of his place, and ordained another? Let him that can reconcile this.

Otho, by reaſon of the new broyles, marches againe into *Italy*, where having ſetled the affaires, and returning home dyed about the beginning of *May*, and was buried at *Maidenburgh*, in the yeare of Grace 974. In regard of his noble exploits, and ſurpaſſing proweſſe, Hee's ſtiled the Great.

Henry D. of *Bavaria*, rebelled againſt *Otho* the II. but the ſword reduc'd him to his duty, *Lotharius* was then King of *France*, whoſe brother *Charles* was by the Emperour created

Duke of *Lorraine*, under condition that hee ſhould bee a * Leige-man of the Empire. *Henry* the Emperour (as the Annals report) got this Province from *Charles* the Simple King of *France*, and entailed it to his ſucceſſors in order. But *Lotharius* diſpleaſed hereat, on a ſudden levying an Army, ſpeedily meets him at *Aix*, and had almoſt diſcomfited the Emperour before hee was aware. The Emperour to revenge this affront, muſters up forces, & marching on as far as *Paris*, at length (not without great blood-ſhed on both ſides) concludes a peace. Returning home, and from thence making an expedition to *Rome*, hee commenced warre againſt the Greekes, who held *Calabria* and *Apulia*: where, after his Army was defeated, hee was intercepted by Pirats, as he fled by ſea, but not being knowne

* *Beneficiarius.*

knowne who he was, they dismist him upon a summe of money paid in hand: and so returning to *Rome*, besieges *Benevento*, with the remainder of his forces, takes and sets fire on it. And not long after, wounded with a dart in a battle against the *Greekes* and *Saracens*, departed this life, and was buried at *Rome*.

To him his sonne *Otho* succeeded by consent of the Nobility, and was consecrated at *Aix*. Hee created one *Bruno* a *Germane* Pope, afterwards called *Gregory* the fift. But *Crescentius* a Consull of *Rome*, set up *Iohn* Bishop of *Placentia* in opposition to him. The Emperour therefore comming to *Rome* inflicts a heavie and ignominious punishment upon *Crescentius* and his Complices, and cauled *Iohn* of that name the XVII. his eyes to be put out.

Otho II. 983. 61. 17 m. 1. d. 21.

The Emperour in regard of the perpetuall dissentions about succession in the Empire, ordained with the Popes helpe; That certaine of the prime Nobility in *Germany* should bee authorised with right and power of electing the Emperours, lest that any man hereafter should set upon that dignity as hereditary. This Decree was made about a thousand yeares after Christs birth.

The Electoral Princes of *Germany*, constituted about the yeare of Christ 1000.

Robert then raigned in *France*, a Prince that loved peace and learning. The Annals extoll him for building many Churches and amply endowing them, as also going in pilgrimage to *Rome*.

This Emperour *Otho* granted to *Boleslaus* Duke of *Polonia*, regall dignity and immunity, as their Annals hath it. This therefore is the beginning of the Kingdome. *Otho*, after this 9. returning out of *Italy* died

The beginning of the kingdome of *Polonia*. 929.

g died. The next Emperour after him, was *Henry*, of that name the II. Duke of *Bavaria*, Kinſman to *Otho* the great D. of *Saxony*, and Emperour. Hee having ſetled a peace in *Germany*, and drawne on ſome of his adverſaries into amity by his extraordinary Kindneſſe, and ſubdued other ſome; marched into *Italy* there reſtoring *Apulia* to the Empire, which the *Sarazens* had taken. Then after his conſecration by *Benedict* the VII. ſending away his Army into *Germany*; He himſelfe, taking his journey through the *Sequanx* Countrey, came to a enterview with *Robert* the *French* King; where a confirmation of amity was eſtab'iſhed on both ſides. This Emperour was greatly loved of the Clergie, for hee was very liberall towards them.

g He was poiſoned by a paire of gloves given him by *Creſcentius* (aforeſaid) his widow. *Henry* II. or the *Lame* 1002. *an.* 13. *m.* 5. *d* 24.

After *Henries* decaſe, when the

the Electorall Princes could not agree, there was an interraigne or vacancie a h while. At length *Conradus* Duke of *Franconia* succeeded. Hee enforced *Stephen* King of *Hungary* to conditions of peace. And having ſatled the affaires of *Germany*, makes ſpeed into *Italy*, which was almoſt all ready to rebell; And at firſt he laies ſiege to *Millaine*; then going to *Rome*, where conſecrated by *John* the XVIII. hee's proclaimed *Auguſtus*, with the peoples acclamation. Then impoſing a mulct upon thoſe that attempted the innovation, hee compoſed *Italy*, and returned into *Germany*. But new troubles againe kindling in *Italy*, hee marches thither and puniſhes the Authors of that Conſpiracy, the Archbiſhop of *Millaine* being one amongſt the reſt, neither deſiſted hee till hee had brought it

b For two yeares. *Conradus* 1024. an. 14. m. 10. d. 12.

it all under his ſubjection. Having diſpatcht there, hee returnes home, and dyed at *Vtrecht*, a Towne upon the frontiers of [i] *Batavia*. His Son *Henry*, of that name the III. ſucceeded him, by conſent of the Electorall Princes. Hee ſuppreſt the *Bohemians* then rebelling, and made them tributary: re-inthronized *Peter* King of *Hungary*, once or twice depoſed by his owne ſubjects, and quieted the whole Countrey, though not without great loſſe of his owne men.

i *Holland.*

At this time hapned an exceeding great uproare at *Rome*, for three contended for the Papacie, and what they attempted was all by ſiniſter practiſes; thoſe were, *Benedict* the IX. *Silveſter* the III. and *Gregory* the VI.

The Emperour hereupon marching thither, having after a ſiege,

a ſiege, taken the City, hee cals a Synod, and conſtitutes *Suitgerus* Biſhop of *Bamberg* Pope who changing his name, was called *Clement* the II. from whom, ſoone after the Pope received conſecration.

Then againe the Citizens tooke oath not any waies to meddle with the Popes Creation, without the Emperours aſſent. *Italy* thus ſet at peace againe, ſoone after the Emperours returne into *Germany*, Pope *Clement* dyed, and was buried at *Bamberg*. The Emperour upon notice hereof creates *Boppo* Biſhop of *Friſigen*, Pope.

This was *Damaſus* the II. who holding the place but 23 daves, *Leo* the IX Biſhop of *Tull*, ſupplied the deceaſed's place. A certaine parcell of an Epiſtle of his is extant, wherein he ſayes, it is not lawfull for a Biſhop, Prieſt, or Deacon, to for-

forſake his wife for Religion ſake, but it is fit they ſhould find her with ſuch neceſſaries as belong to naturall ſuſtentation: notwithſtanding, in caſe ſhe uſe carnal copulation, in caſe not lawfull: ſithence *Paul* ſaies *He had power aſwell as the other Apoſtles, to lead about a wife*; which place he thus interprets. That the Apoſtles had their wives alwayes with them for this intent, that they ſhould be maintained, together with them, by thoſe, whom their husbands inſtructed in the Chriſtian Religion and faith: and not that they ſhould exerciſe the office of wedlocke, or lye together: therefore Saint *Paul* thought fit to uſe the word *lead about*, and not *lye with*. 1 Cor. 9.

In the yeare 1050, *Leo* going from *Rome*, aſſembled a Councell of 43. Biſhops, at *Mentz*, wherein the Emperour

late

ſate Preſident. He dying within three yeares after, *Genebardus* Biſhop of *Aiſton*, by the Emperors aſſent ſucceeded him, this was *Victor* the II.

The Emperour marching into *Italy*, after hee had ſetled the affaires there, returnes into *Germany*, comes to treaty with *Henry*, the firſt of that name, King of *France*, dyes in *Saxony*, and was buried at *Spire*, the Pope and many other Nobles being preſent at his death. Hee had a Son called *Henry*, very [k] young, but was conſtituted Emperour a little before: notwithſtanding, his Mother and the Biſhop of *Auſpurge* governed the Empire. Within a while after Pope *Victor* the II. dyes, after hee had held the Papacie little above two yeares. To him, *Fredericke* of the houſe of *Lorraine*, called *Stephen* the IX. ſucceeded. Hee alſo within few

k Seven yeares old: *Henry* IV. 1056. *An.* 49. *m.* 10. *d.* 3.

few moneths after, dying at *Florence*: One *Benedict*, of that name the X. by helpe of his friends, and without the Emperours assent, sets upon the Papacie. The *Romanes* liked not well of this pranke, who to acquit themselves, dispatching their Ambassadour to the Emperour, proffer the same fidelity to him which they had performed to his Father, and intreat him to constitute a lawfull Pope; *Benedict* hereupon deprived, the Emperour gave them *Gerhardus* Bishop of *Florence*, this was *Nicholas* the II.

The Princes of *Germanie* grudged much, that the Common-wealth should be governed by a woman, the Emperours mother, as above said: upon which occasion, a meane was invented to draw away her Son from her: whereupon the Archbishop of *Mentz* and *Cullen* had the prime managing

naging of all affaires, to them the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*, one in exceeding great favour with the young Prince, was now and then conjoyned, who alone over-ruling him, diſpoſes of Eccleſiaſticall promotions to himſelfe and his friends, eſpecially *Abbeies*: and to keepe the flame of envie lower, perſwades the Emperour to conferre them likewiſe upon other Princes. In the meane ſpace, *Nicholas* the II. dies, in whoſe place the Emperour conſtitutes the Biſhop of *Parma*: but having not at all acquainted the Senate of *Rome* herewith, and in that regard ſome troubles likely to inſue: *Alexander* the II. Biſhop of *Luca* was elected. Betwixt thoſe two a ſharpe controverſie followed, but *Alexander* having the longer ſword, carried it.

The Archbiſhop of *Bremen* onely

onely bearing all ſway with the Emperour, incenſed his fellow Biſhops againſt him, by whom at length he was deprived: and though ſhortly after reſtored to his place, yet hee long ſurvived it not. And the Emperour, (neceſſity conſtraining him) fith all in a manner, complained of the ſtate of the Common-wealth: requeſted *Anno* Archbiſhop of *Cullen*, to undertake the Governement. But hee, ſeeing inſolencie and iniquitie, bore great ſway, excuſing his age and ſicklineſſe, afterwards reſignes up his office to him. This young Emperour now grown to two and twenty, being by nature prone to vice, beganne to increaſe his lacivionſneſſe, and deſpiſing his wife *Bertha*, kept many Concubines. Then raiſing Caſtles all over *Saxony*, intended to bring them into ſervitude, and reſtrained not his

his officers, who used much excesse and insolencie.

Hereupon the *Saxons*, as well the Nobility as Clergie, knitting a league, betooke themselves to Armes, in vindication of their liberty: which, after much adoe, and long intercession, they lay downe againe, he first satisfying their demands, and making a narrow escape by flight in the night time. *Alexander* the II. dying, the *Romane* Nobilitie, without the Emperors assent, set up *Hildebrand*, called *Gregory*, of that name the VII.

The Emperour upon notice hereof, expostulates with them by his Ambassadours, and withall admonishes the Pope to give him satisfaction herein. Hee makes answer, that hee was drawne to it against his will, and when hee never dreamt of it, and that hee would not have beene inaugurated

gurated before Hee, and the reſt of the Princes of *Germany* had approved of his election. Thus hee appeaſed the Emperour, and was afterward by his conſent, confirmed. Then diſpatching his Legates into *Germany* to certaine Biſhops willed them to aſſemble in Councel: but they refuſed it, alleging, that it was contrary to the cuſtome and privilege of their Nation.

This deſigne miſcarrying, Hee in ſome certaine Councels held in *Italy*, decrees, That Maſſing Prieſts ſhall have no wives, but ſhall diſmiſſe them, or elſe leave their places: ſending this his decree to the Biſhops in *Germany*: urges earneſtly, under a penalty denounced, to have it eſtabliſhed: but the Clergy, as they call them, and whole ſtreame of Maſſing-Prieſts, ſtiffely reclaime, calling him an Heretick, that

that propounds ſuch doctrine; ſithence Chriſts words are, *That all ſhould not receive this word.* And *Paul* ſaith, *They that cannot containe, let them marry.* But this Pope not regarding Chriſts word, and contemning *Pauls* authority, would conſtraine men, to reject the uſe of marriage, which is lawfull and ordained by God and to burne in moſt filthy flames of luſt, and ruſh into manifeſt lewdneſſe, but they would rather leave their Miniſtry than Matrimony.

Matth. 20.

1 Cor. 7.

He nevertheleſſe, as before, ſending his agents, preſſing it on, and ſtanding ſtiffely upon it, the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* beganne to hearken to him; who at firſt gently admoniſhes thoſe in his juriſdiction, and afterwards aſſembling a Councell at *Erphord*, would flatly injoyne them, but an uproare ariſing, hee eſcaped

ſcaped death very narrowly.

The Emperour in the meane time, to revenge the ignominie, received the precedent yeare, when, beſieged by the *Saxons*, hee wrought out his ſafety by flight in the night time: makes ready for warre, and violating the league, which hee had made the yeare before, muſters up all the forces hee could poſsibly make, and in the month of *July*, ſetting upon the *Saxons* (who by their frequent Ambaſſadours had, but in vaine, ſolicited him for peace) diſcomfits them in many battels, not without great loſſe of his owne men, no ſmall number of the prime Nobility being then ſlaine. Purſuing his victory, hee harrazes their Country farre and wide, and by his Ambaſſadors, exhorts them to yield: willing them to hope for all favour from his benignity: but that failed,

failed, though a certaine few obeyed. *Bucco* Bishop of *Halberstadt*; and *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, banished by the Emperour, had the chiefe managing of this war.

The Archbishop of *Mentz* againe solicited by *Gregory* the VII. assembles another Councel, and makes a new proposall about the Clergies not marrying, but was entertained in like manner as before, and stood in great hazzard of his life, whereupon he thought it his best course, utterly to lay off this designe.

The *Saxons* thus put to flight, the Emperour dismisses his forces, and the auxiliarie Princes: but upon condition, that they should againe present themselves in armes before him, on the two and twentieth day of *October* following. When that day came, a great many appeared, and amongst

mongſt them, many Biſhops, but not ſo many in number as before. There againe the *Saxons* ſend their Ambaſſadours for peace, encamping themſelves at *Northauſen*. The Emperour ſends them anſwer, that one way to peace, was to yield themſelves: ſo they, though ſeeming rather to doe any thing then this, yet certaine Princes (which were ſent as Interceſſors and Ambaſſadours from the Emperour) promiſing them very largely, that they ſhould not thereby incurre any indammagement, either of liberty or goods: at length aſſented, and the Biſhop of *Maidenburgh*, and *Halberſtadt*, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Magnus* Duke of *Saxony*, and *Fredericke* Count *Palatine*, yeelded themſelves into his hands, and likewiſe ſoone after, many of the reſt of the Nobility.

The Emperour firſt commits them to cuſtody, not without favour: but afterwards flying from his promiſe, cauſed them to be carried into ſeverall places, how be it, not long after, hee ſet Duke *Otho* not onely at liberty, but alſo intreated him very familiarly; but for the reſt, both kept them priſoners, and gave their goods for a prey to others.

Then raiſing new Caſtles and Forts, wholly bends himſelfe againſt the ſafety and liberty of the *Saxons*, and in his abſence committed the whole charge of government to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, by parentage deſcended from the *Saxons*. After this hee conſtituted a Biſhop at *Bambergh*, as alſo at *Cullen*, and an Abbot at *Fulden*. Now a little before this, hee was accuſed to the Pope, and moſt eſpecially for ſelling Eccleſiaſticall promotions

ons

ons. Whereupon the Pope, by his Legate, cites him to make his appearance at *Rome*, within a certaine time, and to give his answere in the cause; But he cals a Synod of Bishops and Abbots at *Wormbs*: there it is decreed, that the Pope, for that hee came to the papacie by sinister meanes, should bee deprived of his place, and forthwith publishes this at *Rome*, by his Ambassadors. But the Pope not a whit moved hereat, both excommunicates him, and also more especially the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Vtrecht*, and *Bambergh*, having formerly excommunicated certaine of his familiar friends, by whose counsell hee supposed him to have beene drawne on to this practise. Furthermore, the Princes of *Germany* deeply offended at the Emperours demeanour and disposition: especially for that, contrary to his pro-

Henry the IIII. excommunicated by *Gregory* the VI. *alias Hildebrand Ann.* 1076.

promiſe, hee perſecuted the *Saxons* with ſo obſtinate hatred, conſpire againſt him, and ſo much the rather, becauſe he was interdicted the Church: whereupon they diſmiſſe the ſurrendred priſoners (the cuſtody whereof was committed to them by the Emperour) judging them not to bee tied to him in any bond of allegiance.

At the ſame time certaine Nobles in *Saxony*, ſtirring up, and drawing on others into their partie, ſurpriſe thoſe Caſtles every where raiſed; ſome by force and command, other ſome by dedition; and diſmiſſe the Gariſons in ſafety, firſt binding them by oath, never after to beare Armes againſt *Saxonie*.

The Emperour upon notice hereof, in ſubtle policie, ſets at liberty the reſt of the impriſoned Princes, to the end that

that they, returning into *Saxonie*, might doe him faithfull ſervice in puniſhing the Rebels: for hee ſaw there was no other meanes to bring about his wiſhed ſucceſſe, with more facility, then by kindling factions amongſt them, and renting one from another, but the event was not correſpondent: for they, after their returne home, well acquainted with his qualities, with joynt minds and might reſolved to fight for the common liberty; and Duke *Otho* alſo, forſaking him, did the like: yet the Emperour was full fraught with good hope, having broken through *Bohemia*, into the countrey of *Campania*, aided with *Bohemian* forces: but when hee was certified of the *Saxons* conjunction, and their Army in readineſſe, deſpairing of victory, retires.

Then at length the Princes of *Germany*, appointing the day, met together in great abundance, thither also repaires the Popes Legate, who unfolding the causes of the Emperours Excommunication, exhorted them to create another, which otherwise they were about to doe of their owne accord: for, making a rehearsall of his life, even from his tender yeares, they pronounced him to be the blemish, dishonour, and reproach of the Empire; and decreed, that (in regard he had afflicted the Common-wealth with most grievous calamities) hee should bee deprived of his government. Hee brought into these straights, beganne to deprecate and entreat by his Ambassadours, when after much adoe this condition was proposed. That hee should stand to judgement, and subject himselfe

ſelfe to the Popes cognizance, whom they would ſend for to *Auſpurge* againſt the firſt day of February. That hee ſhould procure his abſolution within a yeare after the date of the Excommunication, wherein if hee fayled, the whole cauſe ſhould fall, diſmiſſe his forces: In the meane time live at *Spire*, as a private man, with a ſmall traine: not meddle in any publike affaires, nor aſſume the k *faſces*, or Imperiall Ornaments, till the controverſie were lawfully decided. Hee accepts the conditions, Hee whileſt hee lived at *Spire*, bethought himſelfe of going downe into *Italy*, to worke his mature peace with the Pope. Taking his journey together with his Wife and little ſonne, through *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, in moſt ſharpe winter, not without extreame difficultie and danger of life: at length

k Bundles of rods uſed in ancient time to be carried before the Roman Conſuls.

arrives in *Italie*, where he was kindly entertained, by the Nobles and Biſhops of that Countrey, they thinking that hee came thither, incenſt with anger againſt the Pope. The Pope in the interim, at the requeſt of the *Germane* Princes, began his journey, comming on ſome part, till hee underſtood of the Emperours arrivall. Whereupon hee ſtaies to acquaint himſelfe with the ſtate of the cauſe. The Emperour forthwith ſending a ſumptuous Embaſſie, wherein were ſome gallant Ladies, amongſt which, one was accounted ſome-what too obſequious to the Pope: makes ſuite to the Pope for his abſolution: at firſt he ſeemed very loath, and ſaid hee could doe nothing therein, except the accuſers were preſent: but after much adoe, overcommed at length with intreaties, hee refu-

refuſed not. Howbeit the Emperour before hee came into the Popes preſence, ſtayed full three dayes in the lower roomes, court-yard, and without the gates, where the Pope then was: being clad in meane and ſimple apparell, without any regall Ornaments bare foot, and faſting from morne to night. The fourth day, having admittance, the Pope propounds to him theſe conditions: that hee ſhould ſtand to his judgement, anſwere the Princes their accuſation, and if convicted leave his Empire, and never afterwards attempt any revenge: in the meane time live as a private man, and not meddle in any publike affaires, releaſe his ſubjects from their loyaltie and oath: remove from him his Councellors and Familiars; in caſe hee ſhall doe any thing to the contrary, that benefit now

granted him to become voyd, and the Princes to have free liberty, presently thereupon to chose them another. When the Emperour had approoved of these conditions, the Pope sayes Masse, and to purge himselfe from all pretended crime, takes the unleavened bread, which they call the *Lords Body*, invocating fearfull execrations upon his owne head and estate, if all these troubles were not wrought by his adversaries; and then he exhorts the Emperour (if hee thought the crimes objected against him by the Princes, were false, or any injurie offered him) to doe the like, and take the other part of the consecrated bread: but hee excused himselfe, shewing that hee could not conveniently doe it, and the Pope urged him no further, but entertained him with a Banquet, and so courteously

teouſly diſmiſt him. The Nobles of *Italy* underſtanding of thoſe proceedings, were vehemently vext, that hee ſhould ſubmit himſelfe ſo baſely and ignobly to him, who by moſt lewd practices had ſet upon the Papacie, who had polluted all places with blood-ſhed and adultery. In him (being the Patron of Iuſtice, the Altar and Bulwarke of Lawes) they had grounded all their hopes, and had not onely contemned the excommunication, but alſo for his ſake affronted the Pope in bitter enmity: and now, for him, by this, directly the moſt diſhonourable of examples, to brand the Empire to all poſterity, with this ſo deepe and indelible infamie, and come in favour againe with him, the publicke enemie, both to Church and Common-wealth. Thus, and much more after this manner they chafed, and were

were minded to elect the Emperours little Son, carry him to *Rome*, and depose the Pope.

The Emperour herewith acquainted, saw no meanes likelier to pacifie them, then by fleeing from the league, and joyning with them; which fact quite confounded the Popes plot, insomuch, that he was inforced to breake off his intended journey into *Germany*. And which was next to be done by his Legates, signifies to the Princes of *Germanie*, how matters stood, and withall exhorts them to have a care of the Common-wealth. This was in the yeare, 1077.

They therefore create *Rudolphus*, Duke of *Suevia*, Emperour, whom the Archbishop of *Mentz* consecrates. But *Henry* returning into *Germanie*, musters up forces: *Rudolphus* doth the like, who chiefly

relied

relied upon and from the *Saxons*; but in the third conflict receiving a deadly [1] wound, departed this life.

Presently after this victory, the Emperour cals a Diet at *Brescia:* there a decree passed by the Bishops then present, as well *Italians* as *Germans*, that *Gregory* was not lawfull Bishop of *Rome*, whereupon *Victor* the II. Archbishop of *Ravenna*, was appointed in his place: upon this decree the Emperour hastens to *Rome*, besieges *Gregory*, who at length escapes by flight: and then confirmes *Victor* the II. by whom hee is consecrated.

Gregory the next Pope after him, dying, *Urbane* the II. at *Gergoie*, a towne of the *Arvernes*, vulgarly called *Claremont* where there was a meeting of many Princes, perswades *Philip*, of that name, the first, then King of *France*, to the *Sarazen* warre:

[1] His right hand was strucke off in battell, and being brought to him, lying upon his death bed, hee cryed out, saying, *This is the hand wherewith I confirmed my promised loyaltie to the Emperour, &c.*

warre: of which, afterwards, *Godfrey* Duke of *Bulloigne*, went Leader, who had much happy ſucceſſe, and recovered *Ieruſalem*. *Paſchal* the II. *Vrbanes* ſucceſſor, was troubleſome alſo to the Emperour, who for that cauſe intending to goe downe into *Italy*, firſt aſſignes his Sonne for his ſucceſſor. But he, prickt forward by others, and forgetting that duty ingrafted in us by nature, drove his Father into extreame diſtreſſe; having the Pope and very many Princes of *Germany*, his Complices, both in councell, and in the fact. And hereupon hee was created Emperour, of that name the V. his father afwards dying miſerably at *Liege*.

Henry the V. 1106. *an.* 8 *m.* 3. *d.* 16.

Some few yeares after, hee marches into *Italie* with a great Armie, to make an end of the controverſie, betwixt the

the Common-wealth of the Empire and the Papacie, and hewing out his way with his sword, at length arrives at *Rome*.

Now from *Constantines* time, the Emperours had the collation of Ecclesiasticall honours and dignities: but the Popes growne more wealthy: at length greatly repined hereat, as a thing unmeet; and from this fountaine issued almost all the jarres betwixt them. Now this Emperour standing upon his owne right and power, a great tumult arose at *Rome*, in so much as the Emperour raised up in the night, was constrained to ayde his owne men, who fell by the sword, all the City over. But these factious persons once suppresst, he takes *Paschal* the II. and dismist him not till hee had given him satisfaction by entring into a league; but after the Emperour

was

Henry the V. excommunicated by *Paschal* the II. 1115

was returned into *Germanie*: the Pope flies off from the league, whereto he had ſworne in moſt ſacred words, and excommunicates the Emperour, which ſtirred up many of the *Germane* Princes to rebellion, and amongſt the reſt, more eſpecially the Archbiſhop of *Meniz*. The Emperour marching downe into *Italy*, ſends his Ambaſſadours to the Pope, about a peace. But whilſt the matter was in hand, the Pope dies: To him, *Gelaſius* the II. ſucceeds. The Emperour, for that hee was not called to the election, marches to *Rome*, and ſets up another. *Gelaſius* thus depoſed, excommunicates both him, as alſo the Pope by him conſtituted: and the Emperour in regard the Popes Legates ſolicited the *Germanes* to revolt, was conſtrained to retire home. But *Gelaſius* dying in the interim, the *Romans* choſe

choſe *Calixtus* the II. Hee thruſt him out of his place, whom the Emperour in hatred to *Gelaſius*, had created, and after much intermiſſion, compounds with the Emperour.

To *Henry* the V. *Lotharius* of the houſe of *Saxony*, of the name the II. ſucceeded. Him *Conradus* Duke of *Suevia* oppoſed, ſtorming that the ſway of government, was falne againe into the *Saxons* hands: who marching into *Italy*, to ſettle himſelfe in that Kingdome, (whilſt *Lotharius* in the interim held *Germany* faſt) deſtitute of aide, returned home, and made his peace with the Emperour.

Lotharius II. 1125. an. 13. d. 18.

Innocens the II. was then Pope of *Rome*. Him *Anacletus* reſiſted: to whom, becauſe he was deſcended from noble parentage, *Innocent* was forced to yield, but imploring the Emperors ayde, was reſtored.

The

The Emperour returnes into *Germany*, where having ſetled the affaires, hee marches downe againe into *Italy* with a mighty Army, ſubdues ſome Cities then in rebellion, and amongſt the reſt *Ancona* and *Spoleti*, chaſed *Roger* King of *Sicily* out of *Apulia* and *Campania*, and (as fame ſpeakes of him) ſcarce any Emperour ſince *Charles* the Great, atchieved more worthy exploits throughout *Italy*. It is written that then alſo, the civill Law which as wee mentioned, was collected by *Inſtinian* the Emperors command, having beene borne downe by ſtormes of warre, was brought to light againe.

Conrades IV. 1139. *an.* 12. *m.* 10. *d.* 15.

Conradus D. of *Suevia*, ſucceeded him: at what time *Henry* ſirnamed the *Proud*, was Duke of *Bavaria*, and by marriage with the Emperour *Lotharius* his daughter, Duke of *Saxony* alſo:

alſo: who affecting the Empire, and plotting much miſchiefe againſt the Emperour, was proſcribed, and his lands given to others. But Duke *Henry* having recovered *Saxony*; as hee was marching into *Bavaria*, dyed, leaving behind him his Sonne: in favour of whom, the *Saxons* roſe up in rebellion againſt the Emperour, and not ſo onely, but *Welpho* alſo, brother to the deceaſed Duke *Henry*, by force of Armes challenged *Bavaria*, excluding *Ludolphus*, upon whom the Emperour had conferred that Province. A little above wee mentioned how the Emperour expelled *Roger* King of *Sicilie*: but whileſt *Germanie* was thus turmoyled, King *Roger* laying hold on the opportunity, invades *Sicily*, and chaſes out the Emperours Deputie: and then ſpurres on *Welpho* with large promiſes to proceed

ceed and hold the Emperour in play: The King of *Hungarie* too, tooke the ſame courſe, who alſo ſtood in feare of the Emperour.

At length the Emperour marching out againſt the *Sarazens*, loſt his army, and returnes home: from whence intending to goe downe into *Italy*, having all in readineſſe, dyed at *Bamberg*, *Fredericke Ænobarb* or *Red-beard*, Duke of *Suevia*, of that name the firſt, ſucceeded him, a man of heroicke ſpirit. He in the beginning of his raigne, made a peace among the Princes of *Germany*, and ended the controverſie about *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, afterwards with a maine Army, marches downe into *Italy*, ſets a mulct upon the *Veroneſſes*, who had contemned him: and for example ſake hangs ſome of the chiefe upon the gallows. He commanded

m Commonly called *Barbaroſſa*. *Fredericke Barbaroſſa* 1152. *an.* 38. *m* 3. *d* 7.

ded a Court of Gaurd to bee kept about him neare *Placentia*, by the Liege-Princes of the Empire: beſieges *Millaine*, razes *Aſta*, and layes *Deitona* levell with the ground. Going to *Rome* is conſecrated by *Adrian* the IIII. ſuppreſſes the rebellious Citizens, ſubverts *Spoleti*, and made a great ſlaughter: ſubdues the *Lombardes*, and having broken the ſnares laid for him by the *Veroneſſes*, returnes into *Germany*, inflicts an ignominious mulct upon the Prince *Palatine*, who in his abſence had raiſed ſome commotions: and after that, he made the Duke of *Bohemia* King.

The beginning of the kingdome of *Bohemia* about 1209.

In the meane ſpace the *Millanois*, practiſed many inſolent outrages againſt their neighbours, and againe reared up *Deitona*, demoliſhed by the Emperour: whereupon hee, returning with a ſtrong Army, ſacks

ſacks *Millaine*, by the aid of the *Cremoneſſes*, *Pavians* and *Novarians*. The Citie thus taken, the multitude, at the Princes of *Germany* their interceſſion (to whom they had petitioned) was ſpared. All *Lombardy* was reduced into his ſubjection: from hence (having ſetled the Citie with Lawes) hee removes to other people there about. After his returne they rebell, contemne the Lawes by him eſtabliſhed, and demoliſht the Forts by him raiſed: whereupon againe marching thither, hee harrazes the whole Countrey, and raizes all places within their Dominions.

In the meane ſpace, mortall conſpiracies were in hatching againſt him all *Italy* over. In which Pope *Adrian* beforementioned, was one; who, as ſoone as hee had abſolutely reſolved to excommunicate him a dyed.

a Drinking of water wherein a fly was drowned.

The

The Emperour marching into *Italy* the third time utterly everts *Millaine*, puts the Author of the Rebellion to death, and compels the rest of the multitude to go into exile, then besieging the Citie of *Rome*, lost a great part of his Army by contagious sickneſſe. For that cauſe raiſing his ſiege, and placing gariſons throughout *Hetruria:* ſetting over at *Spoleti*, *Ancona*, and *Ravenna*, ſuch as hee pleaſed ſhould governe the Common-wealth, he returnes into *Germany*.

Pope *Adrian* dying, two contend for the papacie, *Victor* and *Alexander* the III. the Emperour being abſent, who indeed enclined more to *Victor:* but *Alexander* firſt excommunicates his Competitour, and afterwards (the diſſention increaſing) the b Emperour alſo.

The *Millanois* perceiving this

b Afterwards whē the Emperour came to him to *Venice* for his abſolution, the Pope trode upon his necke, and cauſed the place in the Pſalmiſt to be ſung, Thou ſhalt tread upon the Aſpe & Baſilisk, &c. The Emperour exclaiming that he did not this honour to him but to S. *Peter*: the Pope replyed, to me and to *Peter* too.

this occaſion breake into rebellion, and in many places in *Italy* expell the Emperours deputies, hanging ſome of them upon the gallowes. The Emperour hereupon returning into *Italie* fought a hazardous battle with them. The Pope was Copartner in the warre, who fled to *Venice*. At length when peace was concluded by truce, hee makes an expedition into *Aſia*, againſt the Enemies of the Chriſtian Religion, where going into a River to waſh himſelfe, was by force of the ſtreame over-whelmed and drowned.

Henry VI. 1190. *an.* 8. *m.* 2. *d.* 22.

His ſonne *Henry*, of that name the VI. was his ſucceſſor: He (after *William* the ſonne of *Roger* King of *Sicilies* death) having beene twiſe in *Italy*, conquered *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, and taking *Naples*, ſubdues *Sicily*, placing ſtrong garriſons there, in regard of the incon-

inconſtant diſpoſition of that Nation. Then hee conſtitutes certaine Nobles over *Ravenna*, and *Ancona*, and throughout *Apulia* and *Hetruria*: ſoone after, having aſſigned his Son *Fredericke*, as then an Infant, for his Succeſſour in the Empire: hee went into *Sicily* by conſent of the Princes of *Germany*, and there ended his [n] life. *Fredericke* his Son being as aforeſayd, in reſpect of his age, but a Childe, all men in a manner deemed it fitter to take his unckle *Philip*: but *Innocent* the III, Pope of *Rome*, moſt vehemently withſtood that. Howbeit the Princes diſagreeing in their choyce, when ſome would create *Philip*, others *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, a great uproare thereupon enſued, eſpecially about the coaſt of the *Rhine*: but *Philip*, partly by force of Armes, partly by his exceeding humanity,

n Falling into a burning fever by a poyſoned potion given him (as it was ſuppoſed) by his wife.

nitie, drew on his adverſaries into ſubjection, and forthwith made his peace with the Pope, whom by experience hee had found a bitter enemy.

Otho IV. 1208. *an.* 4.

Not long after he was murthered in his chamber, & *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* before mentioned was his ſucceſſour: who incurred the Popes diſpleaſure, (being formerly his moſt entire friend)& was at length excommunicated by him: whereupon a Diet aſſembled, the Electorall Princes ſolicited by the Pope to create another, call home out of *Sicily*, *Fredericke* the King thereof, *Henrie* the VI. his ſonne, to whom, (as a little above it is mentioned) they had given alleagiance, being then an Infant.

Him the Emperour *Otho* meetes with an Armie at the *Rhine* to ſtop his paſſage, but was diſcomfited, and returning into *Saxonie*, died, as it was ſuppoſed,

poſed, of griefe. And thus was *Fredericke* made Emperour, of that name the I I, Grandchilde to *Frederick Ænobarb*, or *Redbeard*, by his ſonne.

Fredericke the I I. 1012, *an.* 11.

Innocent III. before ſpoken of, had a Councell at *Rome*, called the *Lateran*, there amongſt others, theſe Decrees paſſed.

That the *Chriſme* and *Euchariſt*, which they call the *Hoaſt*, ſhould bee kept under Locke and Key.

That a private confeſſion of ſinnes ſhould bee made once every yeare.

That an election made by the civill Magiſtrate, in ſpirituall promotions, ſhould be of no force.

That thoſe of Eccleſiaſticall Order ſhould not, without cauſe, promiſe fealtie to thoſe that are called Lay-men.

That the Iawes made by Princes ſhould not prejudice Churches.

That Eccleſiaſticall perſons ſhould be exempted from all contribution.

That tribute ſhould not be paid before Tenths.

That the Reliques of Saints ſhould not be ſhowne forth of a Casket.

About theſe Decrees there followed a great diſſention, betwixt the *Greekes* and *Latines*; for the *Greekes* would not touch thoſe Altars whereon the *Latines* had offered up the *Hoaſt*, till they had waſhed and expiated them: as alſo of a new baptized, thoſe whom the *Latines* had baptized. Hereupon it was decreed that they ſhould returne to their Mother Church of *Rome*, whereby there might be one Fold, and one Shepherd: in caſe they obeyed not, to be (after excommunication) degraded from their Order.

The Emperor goes to *Rome*, and

and is conſecrated by *Honorius* the third. Hee ſubdued thoſe Rebels, which were ſpred all over *Italy*, and proſcribes ſome of them. Many whereof fled to *Rome*, and implored the Popes ayde. This gave occaſion of great diſcord, for the Emperour tooke it moſt hainouſly that his adverſaries ſhould have their harbour and habitation there. The rancor raging hotter, hee by conſent of the Princes, aſſignes his Son *Henry* his ſucceſſour in the Empire; and ſummons the Princes to a Diet at *Cremona*: but being hindered entrance there, by the Pope, and the *Lombards* factions, returnes into *Apulia*: and within a while after the Pope dyes, to whom *Gregory* the IX. ſucceeds, who excommunicats the Emperour for not performing his expedition againſt the Turkes, whereto hee had

Frederike the II. excommunicated by Gregory the IX. three times.

bound himſelfe by vow.

The Emperour deprecating this offence, and purging himſelfe; when nothing could prevaile, hee marches to *Rome*, depoſes the Pope, and inflicts a heavie mulct upon his Complices: then calling another Diet at *Ravenna*, is hindered by the fugitive Pope, who had ſtirred up enemies againſt him in every place. At length the Emperour, after his wife was dead, that hee might performe his promiſe, and provide for the Common-wealth, ſets forward on his expedition into *Aſia*: But the Pope whileſt hee was abſent, makes warre, and ſeizes upon *Apulia*. The Emperour having good ſucceſſe, recovered many places, and amongſt the reſt *Hieruſalem*: being certified of the ſtate of *Italy*, concluding a ten yeares truce with the enemie, returnes with his Army, and eaſily

ſily recovers his owne Countries. The Pope fortifies himſelf by a new league, with theſe nobles of *Italy*, on whom the Emperour had ſet a mulct, and then againe excommunicates him for entring into truce with the enemy. The Emperour loving quietneſſe, by his Ambaſſadours treats for peace, which with much adoe hee obtained, and ſo he returned into *Germany*. But the Pope not able to leave his old guiſe, diſmantling *Viterbo* againe, excommunicates the Emperour, who hereat incenſed beyond meaſure, poſts into *Italy*, in raging and wrathfull manner, and puniſhes all the Rebels throughout *Hetruria*, *Vmbria*, *Lumbardy*, and the Countrey bordering upon *Po*: whereupon the Pope ingeminates his excommunication, and conjoynes in league with the *Venetians*. The Em-

perour coasting through *Italy*, having in a manner reduced it all into his subjection, laves siege to *Rome*, and not long after, Pope *Gregorie* dyes, having first summoned a Councell of his owne adherents, at *Ravenna*, whither notwithstanding they could not have accesse, all passages being blockt up by the Emperour, insomuch as certaine of them were taken.

This was the Pope that patcht together the Decretall Epistles, as they call them, which are a great part of the Pontificiall Law, loaden with multiplicitie of Commentaries: wherein it may seeme wonderfull, that such men there should be that will take so much paines as to adhere to those, not onely inconvenient, triviall, foolish, but also ridiculous workes, as fast as if they were a kind of Oracle: and spend all their labour and time in

in interpreting, explaining and garnishing them: as though they were hired to that end, to defend other mens folly and error, with their best vigilancie and industry, and to loose the reputation of their owne modesty, in other mens impudencie. That Decree, which goes under *Gratians* name, in divers places, amongst other passages, hath these.

The Rule of the Church of *Rome*, which is the blessed *Apostle* S^t. *Peters* seat: must be followed.

It is not lawfull to hold a Councel without permission of the Bishop of *Rome*.

The Lawes of the Church of *Rome* are to be observed, as pronounced by *Peters* owne mouth.

What yoke the Church of *Rome* imposes, though it be not tolerable, it must be endured.

The Miniſters of the Church ought to vow chaſtity, that is, they ſhould not marry.

It is lawfull for him, that hath not a wife, to have a Concubine.

If the Pope be negligent and remiſſe in his office, hee may hurt indeed, aſwell himſelfe as others: notwithſtanding hee cannot be jndged by any man, becauſe hee himſelfe is to be judge of all men.

The Emperour ought to be ruled by, and not rule over the Pope.

All mortall men beſides, may be judged by men, but the Pope, *Peters* ſucceſſour, by God alone.

It is lawfull for the Pope to releaſe ſubjects, from their loyalty and oath, whereby they are bound to their Prince.

In *Gregories* Decretall Epiſtles, and in *Boniface* his ſixt booke of Decretals, the *Clemen-*

mentines, and *Extravagants* as they call them: it is set downe there amongst other things; That the Popes authority is not subject to the Decrees of Councels.

It belongs to the Pope to approve of the elected Emperour or to reject him, if hee be not fit.

There are two great lights which governe the world, the Sunne and the Moone: The Pope is instead of the Sunne, and the Emperour of the Moone. Bishops may deale more mildly with those that have offended by adultery, and other such crimes, as being of lower nature.

The Pope onely hath cognizance concerning the priviledges of the Church of *Rome*.

The bones of excommunicat persons already buried, ought to be digged up and throwne away.

The

The Pope may depoſe the Emperour from his place and Magiſtracie.

The Emperour is bound to performe allegiance and fealty to the Pope, by oath.

It is juſt, that Eccleſiaſticall perſons ſhould be exempt, and free from all coſt, moleſtation and charge.

A man may be declared an Hereticke after his death, and his goods be confiſcated.

The Sons of Hereticks ought not to be admitted to any place of government either civill or Eccleſiaſticall.

It is neceſſary to ſalvation, that all men be ſubject to the Pope of *Rome*.

Thoſe few places onely are drawne out of an immenſe heape: and what kind of ſtuffe they are, there's no man that is well in his wits, but may perceive.

The Law is, that men of deepeſt

deepeſt learning ſhould define the ſame. Soveraigne reaſon is grafted in Nature, which commands thoſe things that are to bee done, and forbids thoſe that are contrary. And all Lawes ought to have reference to the common good. And the Law-maker ought to have the like affection towards the people and Common wealth, that the Father hath towards his owne Children : but what likelihood hereof is there in any the beforementioned places ? but for them, not onely to excuſe thoſe fopperies, but alſo to garniſh, adorne, and illuſtrate them, with new Commentaries, and rather to babble out any thing, then ſuffer their dignity to bee impeached; I pray you what groſſe impudencie is this, but Ile ſting no deeper.

If pride, avarice, ambition of

of bearing rule, and ignorance of learning drew them on to make ſuch Decrees: if they themſelves vary in opinions, nor will one be tyed to anothers Lawes, becauſe endued with equality of power: pray thee, why doeſt thou macerate thy ſelfe in ſtraightning thoſe crooked and contrarizing decrees: I omit that Ocean, or rather ſinke, I meane that part of the papall Law, containing the ſale of Benefices as they call them, and conſecrated goods: for who is able to reckon up their deceits and colluſions; no not they themſelves, that have beene factors many yeares together in this kind of trafficke, do ſufficiently underſtand and know all the trickes: when new ones are daily invented. But this argument requires both another time, and a booke of purpoſe: now therefore let us returne to our purpoſe.

As

As *Fredericke* the Emperour ſo alſo *Lewis* the IX. King of *France* invaded *Syria* and *Ægypt* with an army, who afterwards [o] dyed at the ſiege of [p] *Tunis* City, in the yeare of Grace, 1270.

In his raigne, *William* Biſhop of *Paris* raiſed a queſtion about Eccleſiaſticall Benefices: which cauſe being publickly diſcuſt, his opinion tooke place that it was not lawfull for any man to hold more than one; but it is ſufficient to have ſpoken onely, and writ down ſuch decrees as thoſe.

To *Gregory*, *Innocent* the IV ſucceeded, upon whom, as it were by hereditary ſucceſſion the Emperours diſpleaſure fell. Whereupon calling a Councell at *Lyons*, he ſummons the Emperour, excommunicates him for not appearing, deprives him of his dignity, exhorting the Princes of *Germanie*, to chooſe

o Of the plague.

p In *Africa*, where formerly (as ſome ſay) *Carthage* ſtood.

chooſe another, and this his decree (which amongſt others is in private) as alſo certaine of the Emperours Epiſtles, to ſeverall Kings are extant, wherein he demonſtrates at large, the Popes injquity, and his owne innocencie.

The Emperour was minded to goe to *Lyons*, and try his fortunes, but a new Rebellion breaking forth throughout *Italy*, turnes all his forces that way: where good ſucceſſe failing him, hee returning into *Puel*, began to languiſh, and at length died. Some ſay hee was poyſoned, others, ſtrangled by his Baſtard ſonne *Manfred*, who afterwards invaded *Italy*.

At that time lived the famous Lawyer *Azo*, after whom the whole ſtreame of writers followed; who violating that ſharpe and ſevere Edict of the Emperour q *Iuſtinian*,

q Commanding his *Code* onely (into which as above ſaid the whole law was contracted) to bee obſerved.

nian, filled the world with an innumerable cópany of bookes; from whence wee muſt now ſeeke thoſe points, which thoſe Ancients handled moſt copiouſly and learnedly.

For one man compiles anothers workes, ſo that there is no ende or meaſure of writing: and all overflowes in contrary opinions, inſomuch as the old mans ſaying may properly take place here; who having asked three Lawyers their adviſe; *you have done bravely*, ſaith he, *I am a great deale further to ſeeke then before.* I omit the quiddities which are daily deviſed in abundance; for the Comedians ſaying, falls right here, that Craft ſtarts one miſchiefe in the necke of another. *Cicero* complaines, that many worthy ordinances were ſetled by lawes, but thoſe, for the moſt part, were corrupted and depraved by Lawyers inventions.

ventions. What if hee were now living, and ſaw thoſe *Piramides* of bookes, and our moderne practiſe, and that ſacred repoſitory of the lawes, thus filthily polluted, and miſerably contaminated? Howbeit, as God indeed hath within our memory, brought all other Arts to light againe, ſo hath he raiſed up many men, who being furniſhed with the helpe of good learning, thinke thoſe paines taken in this behalfe, not to be repented of, being to reſtore this ſubject moſt beautifull, and altogether neceſſary for the ſociety of mankind; yea, this gift, even heavenly, drawne out and conveied from the mid-fountaines of Philoſophy, to its former ſplendor and equity; which their endeavours merit, not onely publike commendation, but alſo remuneration.

After his death, there was a vacancie

vacancie for almoſt 22. yeares; firſt one, then another being elected, who notwithſtanding, held not the ſway of governement in thoſe troubleſome times. In the meane time the Kingdome of *Naples* fell from the Emperour *Fredericks* houſe into the hands of the *French*, and afterwards *Sicilie* alſo. For the Popes relied upon the *French* power, though ſoone after moſt cruell warres enſued about thoſe Kingdomes betwixt the houſe of *Arragon*, and the houſe of *Angiers* in *France*, but that appertaines not to this place.

A vacancie in the Empire for the ſpace of 22. yeares after *Fredericke* the II. his death.

When the Commonwealth had floated in this ſtate, as aforeſaid, for ſo many yeares together, *Rudolphus Habſpurgh* is created Emperour. He in the beginning of his raigne, appeaſed thoſe commotions ſpread throughout *Germanie*. And after ſome Diets ended, marches

Rudolphus Habspurgh, 1273. *An.* 1. *m.* 9. *d.* 16.

marches out againſt *Ottacar* King of *Bohemia*, then in Rebellion, whom hee inforced to conditions of peace, which hee notwithſtanding (by his wives inſtigation) not long after breakes, and marching the ſecond time into *Auſtria*, is ſlaine in battle, *Ladiſlaues Cunus* King of *Hungary*, aided the Emperour *Rudolphus*.

At length a peace being concluded with the *Bohemians* by [r] marriage, the Emperour gave *Auſtria*, which the King of *Bohemia* had held many yeares together, to *Albertus* his Sonne, and being hindered by divers buſines in *Germany*, went not downe into *Italie*, neither was hee inclined much that way howſoever: for it is reported of him, that hee would ſometimes merrily tell a tale of the Foxe that would not viſit the Lyon, lying counterfeitly ſicke in a certaine

r *Init a* the Emperours daughter was married to *Wenciſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Ottacars* ſonne.

certaine Denne, becauſe hee was affrighted with the foot-ſteps of other beaſts, of which none had returned: notwith-ſtanding hee deputed a Gover-nour in *Italie*, in manner of Vice-Emperour: and as it is written, confirmed the often mentioned Countrey of *Fla-minie*, and the *Exarchie*, to the Church of *Rome*; when hee ſaw very ſmall commodity re-turne to him from thoſe parts: For the Emperours wearied with perpetuall diſſention and variance with the Popes, be-came more remiſſe: neither would the Popes ever bee at quiet, till they had removed them forth of the Coaſts of *Italie*: and therefore in a man-ner ſheltering themſelves un-der the wings of the *French* Kings, and foſtering their fa-ctions by the Biſhops of *Ger-manie*, at length effected their owne wiſhed deſires.

But

But here by the way let us call to mind the interchangeable course of states, when as they (who were secure, had their being, and held their place and dignity by favour of the Emperours) were inriched by their goods and liberalities, both arrogated dominions over them, and also defrauded them of their patrimony. For they keepe to themselves, not onely a good part of *Italy*, but have also strictly obliged the King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, to their party: which two Kings, both pay them yearely tribute, and also are forbidden to undertake the imperiall dignity without their permission, and when they receive possession from them, amongst other clauses, that is one part of their oath.

That memorable Massacre of the *French*, throughout *Sicilie*, hapned in *Rudolphus* the

the Emperours time. For they being in poſſeſſion of that Country, where after ſouldiers faſhion, playing many inſolent and outragious prankes, were by ſecret conſpiracie, after a ſigne given, all put to the ſword, when the Bell rung to evening prayers. This Maſſacre is commonly called the *Sicilian* Veſpers: which was committed upon *Eaſter* day, in the yeare 1281. *Rudolphus* upon a ſumme of money paid, infranchiſed and ſet charge-free many Cities in *Italy*, belonging to the Empire, as the *Bononiars*, *Florentines*, *Genowaies*, *Lucans*, and others.

The *Sicilian* Veſpers, 1281.

After this, aſſembling the Princes at *Franckeford*, he deſired, but in vaine, to have his ſonne *Albert* aſſigned his ſucceſſour. *Rudolphus* dying, *Adolphus*, of the houſe of *Naſſaw* ſucceeded, who not long after, beganne to picke quarrels

Adolphus of *Naſſaw*, 1292. *An. 9. m. 5. d. 7.*

rels with *Albertus* Arch-duke of *Austria*: and moreover offended the Princes of *Germanie* by his deameanour, as the Archbishop of *Mentz*, by whose helpe he was made Emperour, is deposed, and *Albertus* Arch-duke of *Austria*, *Rudolphus* his sonne, is elected: who, uniting his Forces, having the Princes aid, makes forward toward *Adolphus*, when giving him battle in the Bishopricke of *Spire*, *Adolphus* being grievously wounded by *Albertus*, was soone after slaine by the rest of the Souldiers.

Albertus 1298. *an.* 9. *m* 9. *d.* 5.

After this victory, *Albertus* to confirme his owne title, lest any might report that his former election was unjust, desired to bee solemnely created Emperour; which done, Pope *Boniface* the VIII. reclaimed; denying to ratifie what the rest of the Princes had done: but

but within a while after, when *Philip* the Faire, King of *France*, and hee fell into bitter diſſention: hee approved of *Albertus*, and ſpoke much in praiſe of his progenitours. At length, *Albertus* was ſlaine by his owne kinſmen, as hee was marching into *Bohemia*, having all in readineſſe, to intrude his ſonne *Fredericke* into that kingdome. This Pope *Boniface* added a ſixth Booke, to *Gregory* the IX, his decretall Epiſtles, which are contained in five Bookes. Amongſt the reſt, he made a decree, that it might be lawfull for the Pope to diſpoſſeſſe himſelfe of the Papacie; for it is written, that he himſelfe by ſiniſter meanes, perſwaded *Celeſtine* the V. thereuuto, whom hee ſucceded.

After *Albertus*, *Henry* of that name the VII. of the houſe of *Luxemburgh*, is crea-

Henry the VII. 1208. an. 4. m. 9.

ted Emperour. He, having by marriage made his Son King of *Bohemia*, goes downe into *Italy*; the estate whereof was at that time most miserable. For ever since *Fredericke* the II his decease, about 57 yeares, the Emperour neglected *Italy*, which caused the sundry dilacerations therof from them, by the greater Nobles, especially by the *Guelphs* and *Gibelines*, which two factions have many retainers in those parts.

Two Noble families in *Italy*, which altogether removed into *Italy*.

He therefore first of all constitutes Governours over the Cities, and Free Burroughs throughout *Lombardie*, and swore the inhabitents to his subjection: then resting a while at *Millaine*, indeavouring, but all in vaine, to reconcile the before mentioned factions: where when *Turianus* Governour of the City, had complotted to assaile him unawares: after discovery of the con-

conſpiracie, and ſuppreſſion of his adverſaries, hee commits the government of the Citie to a Vicount. All the Cities in that Countrey yielded into his power and protection, onely *Breſcia* rebelled, the walles whereof (having after a long ſiege taken it) hee demoliſht. Then marching through *Genua*, and ſo ſtriking over to *Piſa*, arrived at *Rome*: and was crowned by ſoune of the Cardinals, becauſe Pope *Clement* the V. having left the City, was removed into *France*, and kept his Court at *Avignion*.

When the Cardinals required the oath of him, which they ſaid was to be given to the Pope, hee refuſed it, and would not have any ſuch kind of oath, to be thereby bound to the Pope: upon notice hereof, the Pope, to inlarge his owne power, expounded that generall forme of the oath at

large, and annexed it to the reſt of his decrees now extant. For he himſelfe alſo preferred many lawes, which retaine their name from him, and are called the *Clementines*.

The Knights of the Temple ſuppreſt about 1308.

Now alſo thoſe Knights called the *Templers*, being very puiſant, were by the ſame violence put to death, and made away in divers places. *Philip* the Faire, King of *France*, by the Popes permiſſion, ſeized vpon a great part of their Revenues. Soone after, the name and memorie of them was condemned: and by the *French* nationall Synod, at *Vienna*, their lands were given to thoſe, called the Knights of the *Rhodes*. At this time alſo the Vniverſitie of *Orleans* was founded by King *Philip*, and Pope *Clements* authoritie. After the Emperour, *Henries* deceaſe and buriall at *Piſa*, being poiſoned as it was ſtrongly ſuſpe-

Hee was poyſoned by a Monk with a cup of Wine in the Communion.

ſuſpected: there followed moſt bitter contentions about the election; for *Fredericke* Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, the Emperour *Alberts* Sonne, and *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, were competitors for the Empire. The Archbiſhop of *Mentz* crowned *Lewis* at *Aix*: and the Archbiſhop of *Cullen*, *Frederieke* at *Bena*: and Pope *Iohn* the XXIII. proclaimed them both Emperours, but of the two, was more inclined to *Frederieke*, which Proclamation increaſed the flame of diſcord, Forces being muſtered upon both ſides, a ſharpe battell was fought at *Eſſine*, a Towne in *Suevia*, but in a manner with equall fortune: and ſoone after, another in *Bavaria* with ſtronger forces, in which the Arch-duke *Fredericke* was taken priſoner, looſing a good part of his Army, afterwards hee was ſet at liberty, and re-

Lewis 1314 *an.* 32. *m.* 11. *d.* 24. *Fredericke* of *Auſtria* oppoſeth him, and is elected Emperor alſo.

Frederieke the other Emperour taken priſoner. 1323.

turning home, dyed within a few yeares after.

Lewis the Emperour having thus compaſt the Empire, marches downe into *Italy*, in deſpight of the Pope, conſtitutes Governours over all the Cities and Free-buroughes, and is crowned at *Millaine* by the Archbiſhop there, from whence (having ſent his Ambaſſadours to the Pope at *Avignion*, againe and againe, about his ſolemne inauguration, and there failing) he goes to *Rome*, after he had ſetled the affaires of *Millaine*. At *Rome* he was entertained with exceeding great joy, and crowned by one or two of the Cardinals: but the Pope ingeminating his excommunication, he, by the advice of his Nobles, creates another Pope, and after this faſhion continued theſe moſt deadly flames of hatred betwixt them, not without moſt

ſcan-

scandalous criminations cast forth on both sides.

The *French* Annall-writers report that *Charles* the Faire, King *Philips* Sonne, was the first that granted Pope *Iohn* tenths of Ecclesiasticall goods in *France*, and shared the prey betwixt themselves. but the Popes chief ayme in procuring this, was to furnish himselfe with money against the Emperour.

After the Emperour was returned into *Germany*, the Pope dyes, and his successour *Benedict* the XII. both excommunicated and deprived him of his dignity. Whereupon the Emperour convening the Princes at *Frankeford* in a solemne speech, complaines of the Popes injuries, explaines the reasons of his allegiance, produces and declares the ancient Lawes of the Empire: with all shewing, that the

Biſhop of *Rome* had nothing to doe with the Commonwealth of the Empire: For he, who is elected by the Princes conſent, is truely Emperour, without any aſſent, conſent or conſecration from the Pope, all that being but a ceremonie, which by little and little crept up, and now is growne too high, to the great diſhonour and indammagement of the Empire.

After this, Pope *Benedict* dying, *Clement* the VI. ſucceeded, one farre more violent than any before him: who in vehement manner propounded certaine ignominious conditions, upon refuſall whereof, hee grew a great deale more furious, ſharpely admoniſhing the Princes to chooſe another Emperour, within a certaine time by him limited, which if they would not doe, hee would take care that

that the Church ſhould not want a Patrone and Advocate any longer. Whilſt the Common-wealth was thus toſſed, the Emperour *Lewis* departed this life, and *Charles* King *Iohn* his Son, *Henry* the VII. his Nephew was elected King of *Bohemia.*

A little before this, began the occaſion of that cruell war betwixt the *French* and *Engliſh.* When *Charles* the Faire, King of *France*, dying without iſſue male, which was in the yeare, 1327. *Edward* King of *England*, of that name the III. being Sonne to *Iſabel*, King *Charles* his Siſter, challenged the Kingdome as due to him; but the Eſtates of *France*, which are called the *Peeres*, ſet the Crowne upon *Philip* of *Valois*, cozen german to the deceaſed King *Charles*, excluding not onely King *Edward* the Siſters Son, but alſo

King *Charles* his posthume daughter; aleaging that the inheritance of that kingdome did in no wise appertaine to daughters: heereupon ensued that bloody warre scarce yet quenched.

Charles the IV. 1349. an. 32. m 7. d. 14.

The beginning of the Emperour *Charles* the IV. his raigne was troublesome, and the Imperiall dignity was offered to *Edward* the third King of *England*: but he, as it was reported refused it, being hindred by the *French* wars.

After the quenching of sundry combustions in *Germany*, the Emperour *Charles* goes downe into *Italy*, and by consent of Pope *Innocent* the VI. then being in *France*, is crowned at *Rome*, by some Cardinals, upon condition not to stay any longer, either at *Rome*, or in *Italy*. Hee returnes to *Millaine*, and granted the office of perpetuall Vice-Empe-

rour

rour for *Lombardie*, to the house of the *Viscounts*, who then bore great sway in *Millaine*; in respect of which honour, they gave him an huge masse of money, and not they onely, but others also upon whom hee had bestowed any thing: which act much extenuated the Emperours authority in that Country.

After his returne out of *Italie*, hee summoned a Diet of Princes, and there preferred that Decree of the Empire called the [t] *Golden bull*: lastly, he assignes his Son *Wenceslaus* his successor in the Empire: which, as it is written, hee procured with great difficulty, though with large rewards: and not long after dyed.

In his raigne, *Iohn* King of *France*, *Philip* of *Valois* his Son, togerher with his yongest Son *Philip*, afterwards Duke of *Burgundie*, Sirnamed the

t Containing the lawes and rites to be observed in the election of the Emperour, as also the dignity and office of each Elector, and other Princes and Nobles.

the Stout, or the Bold; was in pitcht field, neere *Poictiers* taken priſoner by the *Engliſh*, who were then in poſſeſſion of a good part of *Aquitaine*, and the Citie of *Burdeaux*. Many of the prime Nobilitie were ſlaine in that battell. The Annuall-Writers record, that the *Engliſh* were not above 7000. when the *French* made againſt them with many forces, about 60000 ſtrong. This was in the yeere, 1356. the XII. of the Kalends of *October*. The King was carried priſoner into *England*, and died the ſeventh yeere after.

Wenceſlaus 1376. *an.* 2. *m.* 5. *d.* 28.

Wenceſlaus being (as Hiſtorie ſpeakes of him) both by nature and courſe of life, very vicious, quite neglected the Common-wealth. Hee for a ſumme of money, created *John Galeas*, of the houſe of the Vicounts, (a man both covetous and cruell) Duke of

of *Millaine* and *Lombardy*.

In his raigne, *Iagello* Duke of *Lithuania* or *Lutex*, was after King *Lewis* his death, created King of *Polonia*, by conſent of the Nobles: This King was great Grand-father to *Sigiſmund*, the moderne King there, and was the firſt that received Baptiſme, changing his name to *Vladiſlaus*.

Sigiſmund King of *Hungarie* was overthrowne in battell at *Nicopolis* by *Bajazet* Emperour of the Turkes, the third of the kalends of *October*. *Charles* the VI King of *France*, ſent a goodly troope of horſe for ayd into *Hungary*, vnder conduct of *Iohn*, ſonne of *Philip* the bold Duke of *Burgundy*, which *Iohn* was taken in that battell, and carried priſoner to the Turke, where hee ſtood at the next doore to death, but yet eſcaped, which as (the *French* Writers relate) happened

ned thus: There was a certaine Phisiognomer (one of that packe that professe to know the dispositions and natures of men, by their body, eyes, countenance and face) familiar with *Bajazet*; who viewing the prisoner, willed and perswaded the Emperour to dismisse him in safety. For hee should be the man, that after his returne home, should kindle a most violent combustion, which should set a good part, either of *Europe*, or of the Christian world on fire. Vpon this perswasion, the Turke dismisses him, and the rest of the Nobility, that were prisoners after they had paid 20000. crownes for their ransome.

After his returne into *France*, hee began to quarrell with *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, the Kings brother. For he by reason of the Kings sickenesse, which was in a manner desperate,

rate, desired to governe the Common-wealth, being nearest of kindred to the King, but the Duke of *Burgundie*, for that hee was Couzen-german to the King, and elder than the other, challenged the government) his Father *Philip* being dead) rather to belong to him. This sore every day more and more festering, at length the Duke of *Orleans* was murthered in *Paris* in the night time as hee was going home from supper. The murtherers were sent privilie by the Duke of *Burgundy*, who was so farre from denying the fact, that hee maintained it. This was in the yeare 1407. the ninth of the kalends of *December*.

The XII. yeare following, the Duke of *Burgundy* comming to a place appointed, about a pacification in this cause, was entrapped by treachery, and murthered by certaine

taine of the Duke of *Orleans* his friends that had ſworne his death: *Charles* the Dolphin, the Kings Son, who was judge in that controverſie being preſent at the fact.

This is the head-ſpring of the warre betwixt thoſe two houſes, which hath ſo often broke forth ever ſince that time till within our memory.

Robert 1400. an. 9. m. 8. d. 22.

Winceſlaus, by reaſon of his negligence growne into contempt: the Princes deprive him of the government, and elect *Robert* Duke of *Bavaria*, Count *Palatine*. Hee preſently applied himſelfe about reformation of *Wenceſlaus* his miſgovernment: and would not ratifie the grant made by him to *Iohn Galeas*, but contrived a new, how to reduce *Lombardy* into the Imperiall dominions: for which, and other ſuch like cauſes, marching downe into *Italy*, the ſaid *Galeas* hin-

dered

dered and repelled him. The State of *Italy*, was in those times very troublesome, chiefly by the Emperour *Charles* and *Wenceslaus* their default, being too indulgent over that Nation: for over and besides *Galeas* lately made duke of *Millaine*: The *Venetians*, *Florentines*, and *Genowaies*, made war upon their neighbours; and all right was swayed by the sword and violence. Furthermore by reason of the Popes continuall absence, nothing but factions, and those dangerous ones, swarmed at *Rome*.

Then also *Galeas* Duke of *Millaine* made warre upon the *Florentines*, who to worke their owne revenge, solicited the Emperour by large proffers to march downe againe into *Italy*: but when the Emperour was come to *Padua*, Hee (at requeſt of the *Venetians*, who likewise hated *Galeas*, and with-

withall perceiving that their provision was not answerable to their great promises) retires into *Germanie*, casting off all care of *Italy*, whose estate afterwards grew more weake by its owne civill broyles.

Sigismund 1411. *an.* 26. *m.* 8.

To the Emperour *Robert*, *Sigismund* the Emperour, *Wenceslaus* his brother, King of *Hungary* succeeds; at this time there were three Popes, *Iohn* the XXIII. *Gregory* the XII. and *Benedict* the XIII. insomuch as by their factions, almost all the Provinces of *Europe* were at oddes. For there was not one publicke Councell, at any time since *Innocent* the III. as their Bookes testifie, being 200. yeares, and the state of the Cleargie was most corrupt, a kind of bottomlesse sincke of vices and malady, having made an inundation, which in a manner scorned to be stopped, for *Bonifase* the VIII.

VIII. was Pope in the interim, who tooke upon him both the Papall and Imperiall authority. Then the next after him, *Clement* the V. of *Burdeaux*, at *Philip* the *Faire*, the French King's requeſt, (forſaking *Rome*) removed his Court into *France*: and after his death the Cardinals falling into ſharpe diſſentions amongſt themſelves, made a vacancie for ſome yeares; but at length *Iohn* the XXII. of *Aquitaine*, was created Pope at *Lyons*. The fifth Pope after him, which was *Gregory* the XI. (when the Popes had kept their Court in *France* then for 71 yeares together.) returnes to *Rome*; but after his death *Vrbane* the VI. a *Neapolitan*, and *Clement* the VI. a *Savoyſin*, contended for the Papacie. The firſt whereof upheld himſelfe by the *Italian* party, and lived at *Rome*, the other

other by the *French*, and lived at *Avignion*. After thoſe two were dead, the other there before mentioned, were by ſeverall factions choſen in their places, the Papall Monſter having then three heads.

At what time many worthy men, both *Italians* and *French*, deplored the State of the Church, inveighing bitterly enough againſt the corruptions and vices of thoſe times, as far as they could ſee in thoſe dayes of darkneſſe. Amongſt the reſt, *Petrarch* was one, who when the Popes and Cardinals lay at *Avignion*, called that Citie the Whore of *Babylon*.

Whereupon to determine that Controverſie, a Councell was aſſembled at *Conſtance* in *Germany*, by order whereof thoſe three were depoſed, and *Martin* the V. elected. At this Councell *Iohn Hus* and *Hierome* of *Prague* were burnt for

for heresie though they came thither under safe conduct from the Emperor *Sigismund*: the Emperour is much commended, for that Hee, to benefit the Common-wealth, went almost to all the Kings in Christendome, to exhort them to have a care of the common good.

After the affaires were setled in *Germany*, hee goes downe into *Italy*, at what time the *Venetians* and *Florentines* were up in Armes both by sea and land, against *Philip Maria*, *Iohn Galeas* his Son, Duke of *Millaine*, and so forward to *Rome*, being there consecrated by *Eugenius* the IV. and returned by *Basil*, where then there was another Councell held.

Albertus II. 1437. an. 1. m. 9. d. 27.

Albertus Arch-duke of *Austria*, King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, was his successour: whom the civill warres at home, and forraigne abroad held

held backe from *Italy*.

About this time thoſe wits were rouzed up againe which beganne to poliſh the liberall ſciences, language, and good letters, the *Italians* indeed gave the onſet, who were furthered by helpe of the *Grecians*, and then after followed the *Germanes*, *French*, and other Nations: and further, when the invention of [n] Printing came to light, ſo immenſe was the profit thereof, that it is incredible what a happy and joyfull progreſſe enſued. For now, this courſe of ſtudie having beene conſtantly continued ever ſince that time; It is advanced ſo high, that this our age may enter into compariſon with the moſt learned Ages in time paſt, and in this regard is bleſſed above all the reſt, in that it hath pleaſed God to illuminate this knowledge of the beſt Artes and Languages with the true know-

n Printing was invented in *Germany* in the yeare 1440. So *Polydor Virgil*, and others affirme.

knowledge of Him: whereas thoſe Ancients, furniſhed only with the helpe of Learning, though men moſt eloquent, yet they vvere plunged in depth of darkeneſſe, and ſearcht in vaine after that quinteſſence of goodneſſe, whereof they writ ſo much.

To *Albertus*, *Fredericke* the III. Archduke of *Auſtria* ſucceeded, hee paſſed quietly to *Rome*, and received conſecration from Pope *Nicholas* the V. So returning home vvithout dravving a ſword in *Italie*. In the fourth yeare of his raigne, *Vladiſlaus*, *Vladiſlaus* his ſonne, King of *Polonia* and *Hungary*, having by Pope *Eugenius* the I I I. his inſtigation, broke the Truce, vvas overthrowne in battell, and ſlaine at *Varna*, or *Dionyſiopolis*, the X I. of November, by *Amurath* the I I. Emperour of the Turkes. The I X. yeare after this, *Mahomet*, *Amu-*

Fredericke III. 1440. an. 53. m. 7. d. 19.

Amurath Son tooke the City of *Constantinople* by force of Armes, which his succeſſors have now held this * 103. yeares, keeping their Imperiall Court there. *Casimer Vladiſlaus* his brother ſucceeded him in the Kingdome of *Polonia*: and *Ladiſlaus*, the Emperor *Albert* the II. his poſthume Son, in *Hungary*.

To *Fredericke* the Emperor his Son *Maximilian* ſucceeded. A little before the death of this Emperour *Fredericke*, *Ferdinando* King of *Spaine*, chaſing out the *Moores*, annexed *Betica*, commonly called the Kingdome of *Granado*, to his owne Crowne.

Maximilian (as hee did many more) made warre alſo upon the *Venetians*. Him the moſt puiſſant Emperor, *Charles* (being his Grandchild by his Son * *Philip*) ſucceeded, who now ſwayes the Scepter.

Thus

Conſtantinople taken by *Amurath* the II. 1453. The Turkiſh armie at the ſiege therof conſiſted of 400000. men.

*. From 1453. when it was taken, till 1556. when *Sleidan* writ this booke. *Maximilian* 1493. *an.* 25. *m.* 4. *d.* 25. The *Moores* chaſed out of *Granado* in *Spaine*, 1487. *Charles* the V. 1519. *an.* 38. *m.* 6. *d.* 27.

* Archduke of *Auſtria*.

Thus out of that which wee have mentioned, it clearly appeares, after what manner the *Romane* Empire, then which, none ever was or will be more potent, is now in a manner crusht in pieces. For throughout *Asia* we have not so much as a foot, or a nayles breadth, as the Proverbe is. The Turkes, Scythians, and other enemies of our Religion, hold all there. We have lost all *Africa*, but what hath beene recovered of late yeares by *Charles* the V. when hee won *Tunis* from *Æenobarbe* the Turkish Lievtenant, atchiving a glorious victory, and made the King there tributary to him: as also the fifteenth yeare following, besieged and tooke the Towne of *Africke*.

Portugal, *Spaine*, *France*, *Britaine*, *Denmarke*, *Sarmatia*, *Pannonia*, *Illyricum*, all *Greece*, with the adjacent Countries

are torne away: as also the Ilands of *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, *Majorique* and *Minorique*, and *Savoy*, which Provinces have their peculiar Lords, who hold full power in all matters, and are not at a penny charge about any affaires of the Empire.

Now let us looke upon *Italie* the old, ancient, and first patrimony of the *Romane* Empire: but wherein doth it participate with us? The Kings of *Spaine*, by ancient succession hold *Calabria*, *Apulia*, *Campania*, and *Naples*. The Popes keepe in their hands the City of *Rome*, formerly the Emperours Palace and Court Imperiall, together with *Marca de Ancona*, *Romandiola*, and part of *Tuscane*, who are so farre from acknowledging subjection to the Emperour, that they hold the Emperours and their Deputies to

to bee bound to them.

Thoſe Cities there of any ſtrength, either have their proper Lord, or elſe are ſwayed by factions, as having nothing at all to doe with us. Now for the *Venetians*, what a company hold they, not onely of goodly Cities, and free-burroughs, but alſo Provinces: they themſelves in the interim, being an abſolute free-ſtate, and quite ſeparated from the *Romane* Empire. As for *Inſubria*, commonly called *Lombardy*, that indeed belongs ſomewhat nearer to us: but it totters too, neither receive wee any certaine profit from thence. For after that our Emperours had, as aboveſaid, firſt conſtituted Viſcounts there, as they call them, and afterwards Dukes, how miſerably was it rent to pieces, and ever ſince that time how little did it benefit us? For our

Emperors neglecting it in time of the warres there, the houſe of the *Sfortia's* diſpoſſeſſing the *Vicounts*, ſeized upon it, whom afterwards *Lewis* the XII. and *Francis* the I. Kings of *France* excluded; the latter whereof held it for ſixe yeares, till the Emperour *Charles* the V, recovered it.

Thus you ſee, no revenues come from any part of *Italy*, for they neither repaire to our Diets, nor contribute any thing at all to any publicke uſe or neceſſitie, but what they doe voluntarily, or in favour to the Emperour: onely *Germany* remaines, which alwaies repugned the *Romane* Empire, ſcarce ever free from rebellion, as before appeares, till at length it was gathered together by the Emperour *Charles* the Great, and reduced into one body: after which time, when the power of electing the Emperours

perours was committed to the ſeven Electors, as we have formerly ſhewed, it became the Emperours Court and Manſion place. And heereto wee muſt conſider, with what difficulty this little diminitive body of the Empire congealed in *Germany*, could incorporat it ſelfe: for when were we ever free from jarres and civill broyles? So now whatſoever goes under the name of the Empire, is included within the bounds of *Germany*, for all forraigne places, and thoſe without the compaſſe thereof are fallen away. Howbeit we ſee there are many, even within thoſe ſmall compaſt limits, that flie backe, and as much as they can, withdraw themſelves and their countries forth of the juriſdiction of the Empire. I paſſe over in ſilence thoſe neighbouring Kings, and other Princes, that day by day

catch and ſnatch away as much as they can from this feeble and ſapleſſe little body which ſcarce cleaves to the bones: ſtriving to bring that into their owne dominions, which belonged to the Commonwealth.

But to come to an end in ſome time, let us lend our attention to *Daniels* propheſie, concerning all that is ſpoken: we have treated of the Image that *Nabuchodonozor* ſaw in his dreame, whereto wee will returne againe; but in the interim, take a view of ſome other places. In his VII chap. he deſcribes the foure beaſts, which in a dreame he ſaw coming out of the Sea: A Lyon, a Beare, a Leopard, and the fourth and laſt, he ſayes, was terrible and dreadfull to behold. The Lyon ſignifies the Kingdome of *Aſſyria*, the two wings which hee had, are as it were the two mem-

members of that Empire, *Babylon* and *Assyria*. By the Beare is understood, the Kingdome of *Persia*, by which, *Babylon* was conquered: the three ribs which hee sayes were in his mouth betwixt his teeth, are the three chiefe Kings of that Monarchy, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, and *Artaxerxes*, who were more famous than the rest, and eate much flesh, as he speakes, that is, brought many nations into their subjection.

The Leopard is *Alexander* the Great, or the Greeke Empire; his foure wings and heads are the foure Kingdomes which rise out of that Monarchy after *Alexanders* death. The fourth and last Beast is the *Romane* Empire, the tenne hornes are his members, or provinces, such as were *Syria*, *Ægypt*, *Asia*, *Greece*, *Africke*, *Spaine*, *Gallia*, *Italy*, *Germanie*, *Britaine*: for all those they

they held.

Now a certaine little horne grew up, and ſhot forth amongſt the tenne hornes; which pluckt away three hornes from thoſe ten. This notifies the kingdome of *Mahomet* or the Turke, which from a ſmall beginning, budding forth of the *Romane* Monarchy, ſeized upon three of the chiefeſt parts thereof, *Ægypt*, *Aſia*, and *Greece*. Further this little horne hath eyes, and was reproachfull againſt God; For *Mahomet* vented a new kind of doctrine, which was well liked of by his followers, as carrying ſome ſhew of wiſedome in it. Thoſe are the eyes, but indeede hee blaſphemes God. For hee aboliſhes the Bookes of the Prophets and Apoſtles, and acknowledges no benefit by Chriſt, but reproachfully railes againſt all doctrine concerning Chriſt. Fur-

Further, that little horne, saith he, shall make warre with the Saints, and sore afflict them, till the Ancient of dayes shall come to judgement, who hath neither beginning nor end: whereby it clearely appeares, that within the time of this Empire, the tearme of this world shall have an end, and shall never be againe: but after the dissolution of all earthly principalities, then shall follow that perpetuall kingdome, whereof Christ shall be Prince and Head.

In his eight Chapter the Prophet *Daniel* describes the Ramme and the Goat, which the Angell afterwards plainely interprets, saying, the Ramme with two hornes betokens the Kings of the *Medes* and *Persians*: and the Goat the Greeke Empire, and the great horne in his forehead, the first King of that Empire: and that foure

horns succeeded after that horne was broken; it signifies saith he, that foure kingdomes shall rise out of that Empire, but not to be compared to that first King for strength and puissance.

Here we may see how properly and infallibly the prophet *Daniel* portraies *Alexander* the Great, two hundred yeares and more before his raigne. For it shall so fall out, saith hee, that the Goat shall not touch the earth; that is, he should runne over his warres with exceeding celerity, and no man should be able to deliver the Ram out of his hand: for *Alexander* raigned onely twelve yeares, in which little inch of time he almost subdued all *Asia*, as we have above shewed. And though the *Medes* and *Persians* were of incredible strength, yet in three set battels *Darius* was overthrowne, and lost

loſt his life and his Empire both at once.

Many write, that when *Alexander* came to *Ieruſalem*, the High-prieſt read that place of *Daniel* to him, which exceedingly rejoyced him.

Againe, that another horne ſhould riſe from amongſt thoſe foure hornes, at firſt but ſmall, but afterwards very powerfull, which ſhould grievouſly oppreſſe the Sanctuary: hereby ſaith he, hee foretells thoſe moſt bitter perſecutions which the *Iewes* ſhou'd ſuffer under *Alexander* the Great his ſucceſſors, the Kings of *Ægypt* and *Syria*, betwixt whom the Country of *Iudea* lyes; for the *Iewes* have felt that horne which roſe out of the foure hornes, in *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, that moſt cruell deſtroyer.

Hither alſo we muſt apply the eleventh chapter, where-

in

in he ſpeakes againe of *Alexander* the Great, and ſo copiouſly and properly, that it may rather ſeeme a Hiſtory than a Propheſie.

But now againe let us returne to *Nabuchodonozor's* Image, whereof, upon occaſion wee ſpoke in our firſt Booke; as for the interpretation thereof, concerning the three firſt Monarchies, I will not repeate it, becauſe it is both perſpicuous, as alſo made good by the times themſelves, onely we will ſpeake ſomething of the fourth, becauſe it both properly appertaines unto us who liue in it, and is more exactly deſcribed by *Daniel*: *It ſhall be of Iron*, ſaith hee, *which ſhall breake in pieces, and bring all the reſt of the Monarchies in ſubjection to it*: there needs not many words in explanation hereof; for the matter it ſelfe ſpeakes, and it manifeſtly appeares

peares out of the Hiſtory of thoſe Monarchs which we have reckoned up.

But the Images feet, and the toes of the feet, are part of iron; part of potters clay. As the foot of a mans body is divided into toes, ſo the *Romane* Empire, after it hath for a while continued ſtrong, being ſupported by iron legges, and incircled the whole world in its circumference, ſhall fall into toes, and that maſſie body ſhall be diſſolved. This alſo is plainely effected, and needs no explication; for at this day, what is more divided than the body of that moſt ſpacious Empire? And though the caſe thus ſtand, yet becauſe the ſole of the foot is of iron, the foundation ſhall remaine, and ſhall never be extinguiſhed, but the reliques, title, and dignitie thereof, ſhall endure till Chriſt at his comming ſhall ſet a period

a period to all humane things, but it is cleare as noone day, and beyond all doubt, that it is now at the loweſt ebbe.

That goodly tree is fallen, but the roote ſtickes faſt, and remaines yet, not having any ſappe, and therefore unable to grow up, and increaſe againe: but quite dead and withered, yet no force of man ſhall bee able utterly to extirpate this roote, and foote-ſoale of iron nature, but it ſhall ſticke faſt grounded in the earth, till the whole world ſhall be deſtroyed. Hereof alſo wee have had experience, for many have often attempted the ſubverſion of this ſmall and ſlender parcell of the Empire, as the Pope of *Rome*, and laſtly the Turkes, who, though they have done great matters, and it may be, promiſe greater to themſelves, yet they ſhall not make up ſuch a maſſie body, as may hold com-

pariſon

pariſon with the puiſance of the *Romanes*: neither ſhall they ſubvert this ſeed-plot of the Empire which remaines, though it be both dry and withered: nor can any fift Monarchie be raiſed.

Though *Germany* onely hath the title and poſſeſſion of the Empire, yet if it would joyne hearts and hands, it might eaſily expell all forraigne forces, as may be proved by many Arguments.

The Turkes of late yeares have run in very farre upon us, and after the winning of a *Boſphoros*, or *Bogazin* in *Thrace*, raged up and downe farre and wide in *Europe*, whoſe territories are now directly bordering upon *Germany*, which ſeemes expoſed to the greateſt danger, as alſo *Italy*, by reaſon of the neareneſſe. But if wee looke a little nearer into *Daniel*, it is to be hoped,

The ſtreight whereupon *Conſtantinople* ſtands, in that part dividing *Europe* and *Aſia*, being not above 7 miles broad.

hoped, that their power and greatneſſe is now at its full height. For *Daniel* gives them onely three hornes, as wee have before recited, which they now have, being firſt of all made Lords of all *Aſia*, then of *Greece* and *Ægypt*. Under the name of *Greece*, may be comprehended all thoſe Countries almoſt as farre as *Sclavonia* or *Wendenland*. And though at this preſent they are in poſſeſſion of a good part of *Hungarie*, and be it granted, that ſo it may fall out, as they may infeſt *Germany*, or other adjacent Countries: yet becauſe their dominions muſt be confined to certaine bounds, and muſt not extend to compariſon with the *Romane* potencie, as we have formerly ſhewed: it is credible that thoſe provinces ſhall not fall into their ſubjection, as thoſe three are at this day, *Greece*, *Ægypt* and

and *Asia*.

They shall make warre with the Saints, and rage with extremitie of cruelties, against the Professors of the name of Christ, and this their furie shall indure till the end of the world, as *Daniel* clearly testifies. And this is the maine cause of his Prophesie, that wee being hereby admonished and ascertained of the calamities and miseries of the last daies, should not be dejected in mind, but looke for a freedome by the comming of Christ our Saviour, who will presently, as hee himselfe speakes, take off these afflictions, and transport his servants into a firme and peaceable station, and wipe all teares from their eyes.

Certaine places in *Daniel* doe properly appertaine to the *Iewes*, wherein their deliverance from captivity is foretold, and likewise the certaine time Dan. 9.

time (which is there ſet downe and expreſſed) of the comming of the *Meſſias* promiſed to the Fathers. The reſt of his Propheſies belong to the worlds laſt age of all, and to thoſe that ſhall then live: when alſo that little horne, *Mahomets* poſterity, ſhall make warre with the Saints: *And when that man of Sin and wickedneſſe ſhall be revealed and diſcloſed, who ſits in the Temple of God, vaunting himſelfe as though hee were God:* For *Daniel* alſo preſignified his tyrannies, as *Paul* in his Epiſtles expreſly interprets. 2 Theſ. 2.

Satan, whom Chriſt himſelf cals the Prince of this world, who at all times elſe, but eſpecially in the laſt age of this fading world ſhall rage moſt of all, letting looſe the raines of all his wrath and fury, and ſhall ſtir up enemies againſt Chriſt, who ſhall not onely tyrannize by

by force of Armes, but alſo by falſe doctrine ſeduce men into deceite and errour, inſomuch that the very elect ſhall ſcarce eſcape their ſnares, *Matth.* 24.

Surely this is the very time which *Daniel* in his twelfth chapter points at: being ſo full fraught with affliction and calamity as never was before, or ever ſhall be hereafter. For he promiſes us no joy, but denounces moſt cruell perſecutions, when he ſayes, that thoſe calamities which hee ſpeakes of, ſhall indure *till the ſcattering of the power of the holy people bee accompliſhed.* Dan. 12. 7.

Therefore Gods ſervants ſhall bee perſecuted all the world over, and the godly ſhall be afflicted in divers places till the end of the world, which teſtimony of the Propher, or rather of the Angell, bereaves us of all hope of reconci-

conciliation and aggregation. For hee ſpeakes of a perpetuall ſcattering and diſſipation; and after that diſſentions have ariſen about doctrin and Religion, then at length he mentions the end, when CHRIST himſelfe ſhall appeare.

But to comfort, cheare up, and ſuſtaine thoſe that ſhall then live, preſently after thoſe miſeries, hee places the reſurrection of the dead, which that wee may find to our joy and comfort, wee ought with fervent prayers to beſeech God. And Chriſt himſelfe warrants us for the credence wee ought to give to *Daniel*, who in his Sermon rehearſes a place taken out from thence, and commends it to his Auditors.

Mat. 24. Mar. 13.

Thus therefore, theſe our times, being the moſt miſerable, we ought conſiderately to ponderate, and diligently looke into

into this Prophet, who preaches to us now, acting the laſt ſcene upon this worlds ſtage: that we may fortifie our ſelves both in time of theſe preſent afflictions, as alſo againſt all imminent ſtormes and tempeſts, with true and aſſured conſolation, as with a certaine rampire and bulwarke.

The

The names of those Kings of *Assyria* from *Ascatades* to *Sardanapalus*, which *Sleidan* mentions in the beginning of his first Booke, but names them not.

Amyntas.

Belochus.

Bellopares.

Lamprides.

Sozares.

Lampares.

Pannias.

Sosarmus.

Mitricus.

Tau-

Tautannes.

Teuteus.

Timaus.

Derlius.

Eupales.

Laosthenes.

Pirithidias.

Ofrateus.

Ofragineus.

Ascrazapes.

FINIS.

UNIVERSITY LIBRARY COLLECTION 1903 CAMBRIDGE